REPORT RESUMES

ED 010 448 48
CONVERSATIONAL HINDI-URDU. VOLUME 1, PART 2.
BY- GUMPERZ, JOHN J. AND OTHERS
INTERNATIONAL COMMUNICATIONS FOUND., MONTEREY PARK, CALIF.
REPORT NUMBER NDEA-VI-229-2 PUB DATE 62
UNIV. OF CALIF., BERKELEY CAMPUS, INST. OF INT. STUDIES
EDRS PRICE MF-$0.27 HC-$7.80 195P.

DESCRIPTORS- *HINDI, *URDU, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, *LANGUAGE GUIDES, *PRONUNCIATION INSTRUCTION, MONTEREY PARK, CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY

VOLUME 1, PART 2 OF A TWO-VOLUME TEXT IN BASIC CONVERSATIONAL HINDI-URDU CONSISTS OF TWO UNITS OF STUDY, EACH SUBDIVIDED INTO THREE CONVERSATIONS WITH ATTENDANT PRONUNCIATION AND GRAMMAR DRILLS. TWO PRECEDING UNITS OF STUDY WERE COVERED IN VOLUME 1, PART 1 (ED 010 447). A VOCABULARY GLOSSARY OF ALL FOUR UNITS OF VOLUME 1 APPEARS AT THE END OF THIS DOCUMENT. (REFER TO ED 010 449 FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.) (JH)

ED010448

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION AND WELFARE
Office of Education
This document has been reproduced exactly as received from the person or organization originating it. Points of view or opinions stated do not necessarily represent official Office of Education position or policy.

CONVERSATIONAL HINDI-URDU, [illegible]

by

JOHN J. GUMPERZ

and

JUNE RUMERY

with

A. B. Singh

and

C. M. Naim

The research reported herein was
performed pursuant to a contract
with the United States Office of
Education, Department of Health,
Education, and Welfare.

1962

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit III Part A

Page
Conversation. 188

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation. 189

Cultural Notes. 193

Word Study. 194

Pronunciation Drills. 195

- 1. Nasalized vowels reviewed 195
- 2. D 196
- 3. y after i and after consonants. 197
- 4. p, t, T, c, k and b, d, D, j, g contrasted. 197
- 5. Flexibility with longer sentences 198

Grammar Drills. 199

- 1. Pattern expansion 199
- 2. The verbal -gaa forms 200
- 2.1 Regular formation 201
- 2.2 The -gaa forms of deenaa, leenaa, hoonaa. 201
- 2.3 Subject-verb agreement. 202
- 3. The saknaa construction 205
- 4. Compound verb constructions 207
- 5. itnaa, utnaa. 208
- 6. The particles hii, bhii, nahĩĩ. 210
- 7. -see in comparisons 212
- 8. The adverbial oblique; directional postpositions. 213

Rapid Response. 216

Review Conversations. 217

Unit III Part B

Page

Conversation. 219

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation. 220

Cultural Notes. 223

Word Study. 224

Pronunciation Drills. 225

1. Stop plus consonant. 225
2. t, th, T, Th reviewed. 226
3. j-jh contrasted. 227
4. r, R reviewed. 228
5. Flexibility with longer sentences. 228

Grammar Drills. 229

1. Pattern expansion. 229
2. The verbal -ee forms 232
3. Adverbs of location and direction. 236
4. Postpositional constructions 237
5. The infinitive with postpositions. 239
6. The -kar construction. 240
7. -waalaa with adjectives. 242

Rapid Response. 244

Review Conversations. 245

Unit III Part C

Page

Conversation 246

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation 247

Cultural Notes 250

Word Study 251

Pronunciation Drills 252

1. The Urdu consonants k, kh, g 252
2. Dh 253
3. Dh-D contrasted 253
4. Dh-dh contrasted 254
5. Voiced aspirates reviewed 254
6. Flexibility with longer sentences 255

Grammar Drills 256

1. Pattern expansion 256
2. hoogaa to indicate an assumption 258
3. The infinitive phrase as subject of the sentence 259
4. The -aa participle 260
5. Relative pronouns 262
6. caahnaa and caahiyee 265
7. lagnaa, milnaa and aanaa in indirect verb constructions 267
8. aisaa, kaisaa, jaisaa 268
9. kooii, kuch 270

Rapid Response 274

Review Conversations 275

Unit III Part D

Situational Response 277

Review Conversations 279

Unit IV Part A

Page
Conversation. 281

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation. 282

Cultural Notes. 285

Word Study. 286

Grammar Drills. 287

1. Pattern expansion. 287
2. Transitive and intransitive verbs. 291
3. The past of intransitive verbs 295
4. -waalaa with infinitives 298
5. The vocative case. 300
6. kyõõ, kis liyee; kyõõ ki, is liyee, is liyee ki. 300
7. Oblique infinitives before verbs; -kee liyee 303
8. huaa with expressions of time. 303

Rapid Response. 305

Review Conversations. 306

Unit IV Part B

Page
Conversation. 308

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation. 309

Cultural Notes. 312

Word Study. 313

Grammar Drills. 315

1. Pattern expansion. 315
2. The past of -nee verbs 318
3. -nee actors. 320
4. The past of transitive non-nee verbs and non-nee compounds 323
5. kitnaa and kaisaa in exclamations. 325
6. hootaa hai, hoo rahaa hai, hai 327
7. The infinitive plus paRnaa construction. 328

Rapid Response. 330

Review Conversations. 331

Unit IV Part C

Page
Conversation. 333

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation. 334

Cultural Notes. 337

Word Study. 338

Grammar Drills. 339

1. Pattern expansion. 339
2. Complex verbs. 345
3. Transitive and intransitive forms of complex verbs 348
4. The particle saa 351
5. -aa participle plus jaanaa constructions 353

Rapid Response. 355

Review Conversations. 356

Unit IV Part D

Situational Response. 358

Review Conversations. 360

Hindi-English Glossary. 362

Unit III Part A

Conversation

1 rikšaa bulaanaa.
2 aagree-kii eek saRak-par.

---

3 wideešii: ai rikšaa, idhar aaoo.
4 rikšee-waalaa: hãã saahab, baiThiyee.
5 wideešii: ghanTee-kaa tumhaaraa kyaa reeT hoogaa.
6 rikšee-waalaa: eek ghanTee-kaa eek rupayaa.

---

7 wideešii: yee too reeT-see zyaadaa hai. itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktee.
8 ridšee-waalaa: yahãã-kaa reeT too utnaa-hii hai. jaisaa aap kahẽẽ.
9 wideešii: deekhoo, tumhẽẽ baarah aanee ghanTaa mileegaa. is-see zyaadaa nahĩĩ dẽẽgee.
10 rikšee-waalaa: bahut kam hai saahab. g̣ariib aadmii hũũ. acchaa baiThiyee.

---

11 rikšee-waalaa: kidhar lee calẽẽ. taaj mahal-kii taraf?
12 wideešii: nahĩĩ, hamẽẽ bas yũũhii šahar-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa.
13 doo ghanTee-mẽẽ šahar dikhaa sakoogee?
14 rikšee-waalaa: saaraa šahar too nahĩĩ, ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hũũ.
15 wideešii: pahlee ḳilee-see šuruu karẽẽgee.
16 dhiiree caloo, kooii jaldii nahĩĩ.

---

17 rikšee-waalaa: saahab, eek minaT Thairẽẽgee.
18 wideešii: kyaa baat hai. dhuup lagtii hai kyaa?
19 rikšee-waalaa: hamẽẽ pyaas lagtii hai. abhii thooRaa paanii pii-kar aataa hũũ.
20 wideešii: kyõõ bhaaii, paanii ThanDaa hai yaa garam.
21 rikšee-waalaa: ThanDaa hai saahab. magar aap loog aisee nahĩĩ pii sakẽẽgee.
22 wideešii: acchaa sunoo, deer hoo rahii hai. ḳilee calẽẽgee.
23 rikšee-waalaa: bac-kee bhaaii. zaraa sãbhalnaa.

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

wideešii	A Westerner (m/f)
rikšee-waalaa	A ricksha-driver (m)

	rikšaa	cycle-ricksha (f)
1	rikšaa bulaanaa.	Hiring a ricksha.
	aagraa	Agra
2	aagree-kii eek saRak-par.	On a street in Agra.
	ai	hey!
3 W:	ai rikšaa, idhar aaoo.	Hey, ricksha, come here!
4 R:	hãã saahab, baiThiyee.	Yes, sir. Get in.
	ghanTaa	hour
	reeT	rate (m)
	ghanTee-kaa reeT	hourly rate
	hoogaa	(it) will be
5 W:	ghanTee-kaa tumhaaraa kyaa reeT hoogaa.	How much do you charge by the hour?
	eek ghanTee-kaa	of one hour
6 R:	eek ghanTee-kaa eek rupayaa.	A rupee an hour.
	reeT-see zyaadaa	more than the rate
	itnaa	this much
	saknaa	to be able to
	dee saknaa	to be able to give
	dee saktee hãĩ	can give
	nahĩĩ dee saktee	cannot give
7 W:	yee too reeT-see zyaadaa hai. itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktee.	That is more than the regular rate. I can't give you that much.
	yahãã-kaa reeT	local rate
	utnaa	that much
	utnaa hii	just that much
8 R:	yahãã-kaa reeT too utnaa hii hai.	The local rate is just that much.
	jaisaa	as (adj.)
	kahẽẽ	may tell
	jaisaa aap kahẽẽ.	But whatever you say.

	milnaa	to be found, received
	mileegaa	will be received
	tumhẽẽ mileegaa	you will get
	baaraa aanee ghanTaa	twelve annas per hour
9 W:	deekhoo, tumhẽẽ baarah aanee ghanTaa mileegaa.	Look, you'll get twelve annas an hour.
	dẽẽgee	shall give
	is-see zyaadaa nahĩĩ dẽẽgee.	I won't give you more than that.
	g̣ariib	poor
	g̣ariib aadmii hũũ	I am a poor man
10 R:	bahut kam hai saahab. g̣ariib aadmii hũũ. acchaa baiThiyee.	That's very little sir. I'm a poor man. But go ahead and get in.
	kidhar	in which direction, where
	calnaa	to walk, move
	lee calnaa	to carry, take somewhere
	lee calẽẽ	should take
11 R:	kidhar lee calẽẽ.	Where'll I take you?
	mahal	palace (m)
	taaj mahal	the Taj Mahal
	taraf	direction (f)
	taaj mahal-kii taraf?	Toward the Taj Mahal?
	bas	enough, just so (adv)
	yũũ	in this fashion (adv)
	yũũhii	just like that, merely
	šahar	city (m)
	ghuumnaa	to wander, go around
	hamẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa	I planned to go around
12 W:	nahĩĩ, hamẽẽ bas yũũhii šahar-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa.	No, I just wanted to go around the city.
	doo ghanTee-mẽẽ	in two hours
	dikhaa saknaa	to be able to show
	dikhaa sakoogee	will you be able to show
13 W:	doo ghanTee-mẽẽ šahar dikhaa sakoogee?	Can you show me the city in two hours?
	saaraa	whole, all (adj)
	ḳhaas	main, important (adj)
	jagah	place (f)
	ḳhaas jaghẽẽ	main places
	dikhaa saktaa hũũ	I can show
14 R:	saaraa šahar too nahĩĩ, ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hũũ.	Not the whole city, but I can show you the important places.

	pahlaa	first (adj)
	pahlee	at first (adv)
	k̤ilaa	fort (m)
	k̤ilee-see	from the fort
	šuruu karnaa	to begin
	šuruu karẽẽgee	will begin
15 W:	pahlee k̤ilee-see šuruu karẽẽgee.	We'll begin with the fort first.
	dhiiree	slowly (adv)
	kooii	any, some (adj)
	kooii jaldii nahĩĩ	there's no hurry
16 W:	dhiiree caloo, kooii jaldii nahĩĩ.	Go slowly. There's no hurry.
	minaT	minute (m)
	eek minaT	for a moment
	Thairnaa	to stay, stop
17 R:	saahab, eek minaT Thairẽẽgee.	Sir, we'll stop for a moment.
	baat	matter (m)
	dhuup	sunshine
	lagnaa	to be affected by, be applied
	dhuup lagtii hai	sunshine is felt
18 W:	kyaa baat hai. dhuup lagtii hai kyaa?	What's the matter? Are you feeling the sun?
	pyaas	thirst (f)
	pyaas lagtii hai	thirst is felt
	paanii	water (m)
	piinaa	to drink
	pii-kar	having drunk
	paanii pii-kar	having drunk water
19 R:	hamẽẽ pyaas lagtii hai. abhii thooRaa paanii pii-kar aataa hũũ.	I'm thirsty. I'll have a little water and come right back.
	kyõõ	why
	kyõõ bhaaii	say, fellow (used in questions only)
	ThanDaa	cold
	garam	hot
20 W:	kyõõ bhaaii, paanii ThanDaa hai yaa garam.	Say, is the water hot or cold?

	loog	people (m)
	aap loog	you people, you all
	aisaa	this way, like this
	aisee	this way (adv)
	pii sakẽẽgee	can drink
21 R:	ThanDaa hai saahab. magar aap loog aisee nahĩĩ pii sakẽẽgee.	It's cold, sir, but you people can't drink this way.
	hoonaa	to become
	hoo rahaa hai	is becoming
	kilee	to the fort (oblique sg)
	calẽẽgee	will go
22 W:	acchaa sunoo, deer hoo rahii hai. kilee calẽẽgee.	Listen, it's getting late. We'll to the fort.
	bacnaa	to be careful, to save oneself (intr)
	bac-kee	having been careful
	sãbhalnaa	to be careful (intr)
23 R:	bac-kee bhaaii. zaraa sãbhalnaa.	Look out, friend. Be a little careful.

Cultural Notes

The city of Agra, located on the river Jumna (*jamunaa*), about forty miles south of Mathura and 120 miles south of Delhi, was for many years the capital of India's Moghul emperors and is famous for its many architectural monuments. The best known of these is the Taj Mahal, the tomb of Mumtaz Mahal wife of the emperor Shah Jahan, which attracts visitors from all over the world. Other places of interest include emperor Akbar's fort called the *kilaa*, the tomb of Babar, the first of the Moghul rulers and the picturesque old bazaar.

Metered taxis with English-speaking driver-guides are available at western style hotels. But a visitor desiring a more leisurely look at the city might wish to try one of the many bicycle rickshas which are beginning to replace the older horse drawn tongas. These conveyances are a characteristic sight in most modern North Indian cities. Each city has its own style of brightly colored ricksha decoration, which makes the vehicles visible from afar. In Agra ricksha stands can be found at most important intersections.

Rickshas do not carry meters. Local residents tend to adhere to informally agreed upon rates. An outside visitor, however, will have to do some negotiating before each trip. In these negotiations expressions such as *jaisaa aap kahẽẽ*, 'as you say,' are favorites of drivers, since this puts the burden of fixing the rate on the foreigner, whose estimates are often higher than the going amount.

The Indian rupee used to be divided into sixteen annas, each of which had four pice (*paisee*). Since the currency reform of 1959, a rupee is divided into 100 new pice (*naee paisee*). The terms *aanaa* and *paisaa*, however, continue to be used colloquially, like the English nickel and dime.

Word Study

1. Adjective-noun correspondences

Thandaa	cold	Thand	cold	(f)
garam	hot	garmii	heat	
pyaasaa	thirsty	pyaas	thirst	(f)
bhuukhaa	hungry	bhuukh	hunger	(f)

hamẽẽ pyaas lagtii hai.	I'm thirsty.
hamẽẽ garmii lagtii hai.	I'm hot.
hamẽẽ ThanD lagtii hai.	I'm cold.
hamẽẽ bhuukh lagtii hai.	I'm hungry.

Expressions for 'I am cold' (hungry, warm, etc.) contain the verb lagnaa 'feel' in an indirect verb construction.

2. Numbers

ikkiis	21	chabbiis	26
baaiis	22	sattaaiis	27
teeiis	23	aTThaaiis	28
caubiis	24	untiis	29
pacciis	25	tiis	30

3. Other measures of time

sekanD	second	(m)	haftaa	week	
minaT	minute	(f)	mahiinaa	month	
ghanTaa	hour		saal	year	(m)
din	day	(m)			

eek minaT Thairẽẽgee.
eek ghanTaa Thairẽẽgee.
eek din Thairẽẽgee.
eek haftaa Thairẽẽgee.
eek mahiinaa Thairẽẽgee.
eek saal Thairẽẽgee.

doo ghanTee-mẽẽ šahar dikhaa sakoogee?
doo din-mẽẽ šahar dikhaa sakoogee?
doo haftee-mẽẽ šahar dikhaa sakoogee?

Note that the time words take the singular oblique even though they are preceded by doo.

4. Related pairs

g̣ariib	poor
amiir	rich

g̣ariib aadmii hũũ.
amiir aadmii hũũ.

Pronunciation Drills

1. Nasalized vowels reviewed

A. Additive drill (men)

Add -ũũgaa.

Instructor: kar
Men: karũũgaa.

cal
gin
rah
likh
paRh

bool
beec
puuch
ghuum
k̤hariid

dhoo
pii
khaa
dhulaa
dikhaa

B. Additive drill (women)

Repeat Drill A adding -ũũgii.

Instructor: kar
Women: karũũgii.

C. Additive drill

Add -ẽẽgee.

ruk
baat kar
pahũc
samajh
sãbhal

laa
bataa
dikhaa
dhoo
pii

ghuum
Thair
baiTh
deekh
k̤hariid

D. Response drill (men)

Instructor: aap kab calẽẽgee.
Men: mãĩ kal jaaũũgaa.

aap kab ghuumẽẽgee.
aap kab Thairẽẽgee.
aap kab rukẽẽgee.
aap kab pahũcẽẽgee.
aap kab deekhẽẽgee.
aap kab jaaẽẽgee.
aap kab dẽẽgee.
aap kab puuchẽẽgee.
aap kab boolẽẽgee.
aap kab k̤hatam karẽẽgee.

E. Response drill (women)

Repeat Drill D with -ũũgii.

Instructor: aap kab calẽẽgii.
Women: mãĩ kal calũũgii.

F. Additive drill

Add parsõõ.

Instructor: ghuum sakẽẽgee.
Class: parsõõ ghuum sakẽẽgee.

Thair sakẽẽgee.
puuch sakẽẽgee.
deekh sakẽẽgee.
bool sakẽẽgee.
aa sakẽẽgee.

cal sakẽẽgee.
rakh sakẽẽgee.
ruk sakẽẽgee.
pahũc sakẽẽgee.
šuruu kar sakẽẽgee.

G. Additive drill

Add aisee nahĩĩ.

Instructor: pii sakẽẽgee.
Class: aisee nahĩĩ pii sakẽẽgee.

ruk sakẽẽgee.
jaa sakẽẽgee.
cal sakẽẽgee.
gin sakẽẽgee.
kah sakẽẽgee.
likh sakẽẽgee.
paRh sakẽẽgee.

puuch sakẽẽgee.
dhoo sakẽẽgee.
jaa sakẽẽgee.
bataa sakẽẽgee.
bulaa sakẽẽgee.
dohraa sakẽẽgee.
šuruu kar sakẽẽgee.

2. D

A. Imitation drill

Diil
Dool
Daal

anDaa
anDee
DanDii

ThanDaa
ThanDee
ThanDii

Daaltaa
Daaltee
Daaltii

B. Additive drill

Add DeeRh.

Instructor: ghanTaa hoogaa.
Class: DeeRh ghanTaa hoogaa.

din hoogaa.
saal hoogaa.
minaT hoogii.
haftaa hoogaa.
mahiinaa hoogaa.

C. Buildup drill

paanii/garam hai/yaa/ThanDaa.

kyaa/woo/miThaaii/ThanDii hai?

yee/rasgullee/bahut/ThanDee hãĩ.

hamẽẽ/ThanD/lagtii hai.

tumhẽẽ/ThanD/lagtii hai.

hamaaree/anDarwiyar/kahãã hai.

D. Buildup drill

sab/ghar/ginoo.

meeraa/ghar/garam hai.

yee/gujraatii/ghar kaisee hãĩ.

us/gaahak-kaa/ghar kahãã hai.

guptaa jii/ghuum rahee hĩĩ.

guptaa jii/kahãã/ghuumtee hãĩ.

guptaa jii/udhar/ghuumtee hãĩ.

gyaarah/ghanTee-kee/gyaarah rupaee.

3. y after i and after consonants

A. Imitation drill

pyaas
pyaasaa
pyaar
pyaaraa
syaahii
ghaarah
kyõõ

piyaa
diyaa
siyaa
kiyaa
liyaa
liyee
piyoo

B. Additive drill

Add aur kyaa.

Instructor: kiyaa.
Class: aur kyaa kiyaa.

liyaa.
diyaa.
piyaa.
siyaa.

C. Additive drill

Add kyõõ to the verbs in Drill B.

Instructor: kiyaa.
Class: kyõõ kiyaa.

4. p, t, T, c, k and b, d, D, j, g contrasted

Compare the following pairs of words as your instructor reads them:

pool	bool	too	doo	Taal	Daal
baapuu	baabuu	aatii	aadii	anTaa	anDaa
jiip	jiib	baat	baad	baaT	baaD

caar	jaar	kaam	gaam
bacaa	bajaa	makar	magar
naac	naaj	paak	paag

A. Imitation drill

pool-------bool		too-------doo		Taal------Daal	
paat	baat	tiin	diin	Tas	Das
pun	bun	til	dil	Tasan	Dasan
baapuu	baabuu	aatii	aadii	anTaa	anDaa
sapuut	sabuut	utaar	udaar		
coop	coob	baat	baad	peeT	peeD
baap	baab	mat	mad	baaT	baaD
jiip	jiib	kant	kand	baT	baD

cain------jain		kaam-------gaam	
caar	jaar	kam	gam
coor	joor	kal	gal
cap	jap	karam	garam
bacaa	bajaa	makar	magar
acaar	ajaar	raakaa	raagaa
naac	naaj	neek	neeg
mooc	mooj	paak	paag
bac	baj	jook	joog

B. Buildup drill

pušpaa-kee/paas/pakkaa/papiitaa hai.
tumhaaraa/reeT/kyaa hoogaa.
tiin/Tiicar/taiyaar hãĩ.
moocii-koo/caar/ciizẽẽ/cahiyẽẽ.
kyaa/kamlaa-koo/kooii/kaam hai?

paanii/pii-kar/aataa hai.
aap-kaa/kooT/piilaa hai?
paunee/tiin/bajee/piitaa hai.
kyaa/papiitee/cããdnii cauk-mẽẽ hãĩ?

yee/seeb/aap-kee hãĩ.
aap/jawaab/diijiyee.
biis-papiitee/deenaa.
kyaa/paunee/pããc bajee hãĩ?
pušpaa jii-koo/bataaoo.

tum/TuuTee/paisee doo.
kyaa/tum/dillii-tak/jaaoogee?
doo/tiin/din-mẽẽ/dẽẽgee.
too/tum/doo/deenaa.
kal/raat-kee baad/milẽẽgee.
us-kee baad/baat/karẽẽgee.
doonõõ/taazee hãĩ.
juutee-kii/dukaan-tak/aaiyee.

guptaa jii,/baciyee.
juutee/cããdnii cauk-mẽẽ/milẽẽgee.
moocii-koo/garmii/lagtii hai.
yee/loog/eek/paisaa hii/dẽẽgee.
us/aurat-kii/bahut/madad kiijiyee.
doo/pahar-koo/caar bajee/aaeegaa.

5. Flexibility with longer sentences

A. Buildup drill

For best results a normal rate of speed must be maintained throughout.

wideešii-kaa/rikšaa/aagree-kii/eek/saRak-par/caltaa hai.
kyaa/rikšee-waalee-koo/baarah aanee ghanTaa/mileegaa?
rikšee-waalee-koo/baarah aanee ghanTaa/wideešii/dẽẽgee.
rikšee-waalee-koo/eek ghanTee-kaa/eek rupayaa/wideešii/nahĩĩ dẽẽgee.
wideešii-koo/bas/yũũhii/šahar-mẽẽ/ghuumnaa thaa.
kyaa/rikšee-waalaa/doo ghanTee-mẽẽ/saaraa/šahar/dikhaa/sakeegaa?
rikšee-waalaa/doo ghanTee-mẽẽ/ḳhaas/jaghẽẽ/dikhaa/saktaa hai.
abhii/thooRaa/paanii/pii-kar/rikšee-waalaa/aataa hai.
rikšee-waalaa/paanii/piitaa hai,/magar/wideešii/aisee/nahĩĩ/pii sakẽẽgee.

B. Expansion drill

Repeat Drill A as an expansion drill, e.g.,

caltaa hai
saRak-par
eek
aagree-kii
rikšaa
wideešii-kaa

Grammar Drills

1. Pattern expansion drills

Beginning with this unit we introduce a new set of drills designed to integrate new words and constructions with the patterns learned in previous units. Each drill consists of variations on one of the patterns from the conversations. Each pattern is drilled in two stages: first, in a substitution drill or transformation drill and then in a class or individual conversational response drill.

1.1 Pattern 1

A. Substitution drill

A rupee an hour.

(eek) ghanTee-kaa eek rupayaa.
doo
caar
aaTh
das

B. Substitution drill

One rupee for twenty minutes.

(biis minaT-kaa) eek rupayaa.
eek din-kaa
eek haftee-kaa
doo din-kaa
pacciis minaT-kaa

C. Substitution drill

Ten rupees an hour.

(eek ghanTee-kee) das rupaee.
eek-din-kee
aadhaa ghanTee-kee
DeeRh din-kee

D. Individual conversational response drill

wideešii:	tumhaaraa kyaa reeT hoogaa.	How much do you charge?
rikšee-waalaa:	eek ghanTee-kaa eek rupayaa.	It's one rupee an hour.

Instructor: As the wideešii, continue asking each student the same question.

1.2 Pattern 2

A. Substitution drill

I wanted to wander around the city.

hamẽẽ (šaher)-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa.
dillii
nainiitaal
baazaar
aagree
ḳilee

B. Chain drill

rikšee-waalaa:	aap-koo kahãã jaanaa thaa.	Where did you want to go?
wideešii:	hamẽẽ šaher-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa.	I wanted to wander around the city.
rikšee-waalaa:	aap-koo kahãã jaanaa thaa.	
wideešii:	hamẽẽ baazaar-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa.	

1.3 Pattern 3

A. Substitution-agreement drill

Is the water hot or cold?

(paanii) ThanDaa hai yaa garam.
phal
miThaaii
peeRee
khaanaa
khurcan

B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor:	paanii ThanDaa hai yaa garam.	Is the water hot or cold?
1st Student:	garam hai.	It's hot.
Instructor:	phal pakkaa hai yaa kaccaa.	
2nd Student:	pakkaa hai.	
Instructor:	saaRii sastii hai yaa mahãgii.	
	papiitee baRee hãĩ yaa chooTee.	
	dhoobii g̣ariib hai yaa amiir.	
	laal seeb pakkaa hai yaa kaccaa.	
	peeRee ThanDee hãĩ yaa garam.	
	keelee sastee hãĩ yaa mahãgee.	
	beer baRee hãĩ yaa chooTee.	
	rikšee-waalaa g̣ariib hai yaa amiir.	
	rikšaa baRaa hai yaa chooTaa.	
	khurcan ThanDii hai yaa garam.	
	aap g̣ariib hãĩ yaa amiir.	

2. The verbal -gaa forms

Below are some examples of -gaa forms learned so far:

ghar-mẽẽ deekhẽẽgee.
koošiš karẽẽgee.
caar bajee-kee baad mileegaa.
ḳilee-see šuruu karũũgaa.
us-see zyaadaa nahĩĩ dũũgaa.

The -gaa forms consist of the verb root followed first by a set of verbal suffixes and then by the ending -gaa(ee, ii). The verbal endings are similar to those for hai, and vary in accordance with the person and number of the subject in the same way hai does. -gaa functions like a marked adjective and varies with the gender and number of the subject.

hũũ: deekhũũgaa(ii)
hai: deekheegaa(ii)
hãĩ: deekhẽẽgee(ii)
hoo: deekhoogee(ii)

-gaa forms most frequently have meanings equivalent to the English future, but they need not always refer to future time. Thus in:

ḳilee calẽẽgee.

the closest English translation is 'Let's go to the fort.' Other meanings will be illustrated in later units.

2.1 Regular formation

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Go today.	No, I'll go tomorrow.
aaj hii calnaa.	nahĩĩ, kal calẽẽgee.
aaj hii karnaa.	karẽẽgee.
aaj hii Thairnaa.	Thairẽẽgee.
aaj hii jaanaa.	jaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii aanaa.	aaẽẽgee.
aaj hii deekhnaa.	deekhẽẽgee.
aaj hii dikhaanaa.	dikhaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii dhoonaa.	dhooẽẽgee.
aaj hii dhulaanaa.	dhulaaẽẽgee.

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
See the fort today.	O.K., I'll see it this afternoon.
aaj hii ḳilaa deekhiyee.	acchaa, šaam-koo deekhẽẽgee.
aaj hii idhar aa jaaiyee.	aa jaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii šahar-mẽẽ ghuumiyee.	ghuumẽẽgee.
aaj hii udhar caliyee.	calẽẽgee.
aaj hii kapRee dhulaaiyee.	dhulaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii khaanaa khaaiyee.	khaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii kaam šuruu kiijiyee.	šuruu karẽẽgee.
aaj hii juutee ḳhariidiyee.	ḳhariidẽẽgee.
aaj hii bairee-koo bulaaiyee.	bulaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii dillii jaaiyee.	jaaẽẽgee.
aaj hii us aadmii-see puuchiyee.	puuchẽẽgee.

2.2 The -gaa forms of deenaa, leenaa, hoonaa

These verbs lose their root vowel before the verbal ending.

us-see zyaadaa nahĩĩ dũũgaa.

Here is a complete set of forms for these verbs:

mãĩ	yee, woo (sg)	aap, ham yee, woo (pl)	tum
dũũgaa	deegaa	dẽẽgee	doogee
lũũgaa	leegaa	lẽẽgee	loogee
hooũũgaa	hoogaa	hõõgee	hoogee

A. Conversational response drill: deenaa, leenaa

Instructor	Class
Take it tomorrow.	No, I'll take it today.
kal hii leenaa.	nahĩĩ, aaj lẽẽgee.
kal hii deenaa.	dẽẽgee.
kal hii dee deenaa.	dee dẽẽgee.
kal hii lee leenaa.	lee lẽẽgee.
kal hii eek seeb leenaa.	lẽẽgee.
kal hii paisaa deenaa.	dẽẽgee.

B. Substitution drill: hoonaa

The clothes will be ready tomorrow.

(kapRee) kal taiyaar hõõgee.
paijaamee
kurtee
moozee
juutee

2.3 Subject-verb agreement

A. Conversational response drill: mãĩ

Instructor	Men
Where will you look?	I'll look at home.
tum kahãã deekhoogee.	ghar-mẽẽ deekhũũgaa.
tum kahãã khaaoogee.	khaaũũgaa.
tum kahãã piyoogee.	piyũũgaa.
tum kahãã Thiik karoogee.	Thiik karũũgaa.
tum kahãã saaf kar doogee.	saaf kar dũũgaa.
tum kahãã likhoogee.	likhũũgaa.
tum kahãã dhoogee.	dhooũũgaa.
tum kahãã šuruu karoogee.	šuruu karũũgaa.

B. Conversational response drill: mãĩ

Repeat Drill A with only women responding.

Instructor	Women
tum kahãã deekhoogii.	ghar-mẽẽ deekhũũgii.
tum kahãã khaaoogii.	khaaũũgii.

C. Conversational response drill: tum

rikšee-waalaa	wideešii
I won't show you the fort.	Then what will you show me?
ḳilaa nahĩĩ dikhaaũũgaa.	too tum kyaa dikhaaoogee.
taaj mahal nahĩĩ lee calũũgaa.	kahãã kee caloogee.
saaraa šahar nahĩĩ ghuumũũgaa.	kahãã ghuumoogee.
baarah bajee nahĩĩ pahũcũũgaa.	kab pahũcoogee.
peeRee nahĩĩ ḳhariidũũgaa.	kyaa ḳhariidoogee.
baazaar nahĩĩ jaaũũgaa.	kahãã jaaoogee.
hooTal-par nahĩĩ rukũũgaa.	kahãã rukoogee.
aaTh bajee nahĩĩ šuruu karũũgaa.	kab šuruu karoogee.
paanii nahĩĩ piyũũgaa.	kyaa piyoogee.
doo pahar-koo nahĩĩ kaam karũũgaa.	kab kaam karoogee.

D. Conversational response drill: aap

Instructor	Class
I'm leaving here.	When are you leaving here?
yahãã-see jaaũũgaa.	aap kab yahãã-see jaaẽẽgee.
taaj mahal deekhũũgaa.	taaj mahal deekhẽẽgee.
rikšaa bulaaũũgaa.	rikšaa bulaaẽẽgee.
baazaar-mẽẽ ghuumũũgaa.	baazaar-mẽẽ ghuumẽẽgee.
yahãã Thairũũgaa.	yahãã Thairẽẽgee.
cappal ḳhariidũũgaa.	cappal ḳhariidẽẽgee.
dillii-mẽẽ rukũũgaa.	dillii-mẽẽ rukẽẽgee.
kapRee dhulaaũũgaa.	kapRee dhulaaẽẽgee.
paanii piyũũgaa.	paanii piyẽẽgee.
hindii paRhũũgaa.	hindii paRhẽẽgee.

E. Chain drill: mãĩ, aap

Instructor:	yahãã-see jaanaa	leaving here
1st Student:	mãĩ yahãã-see jaaũũgaa(ii).	I'm leaving here.
2nd Student:	aap kab yahãã-see jaaẽẽgee(ii).	When are you leaving here?

Instructor: taaj mahal deekhnaa
2nd Student: mãĩ taaj mahal deekhũũgii.
3rd Student: aap kab taaj mahal deekhẽẽgii.

Instructor: Continue with the substitutions in Drill D, giving them all in the -naa form.

F. Chain drill: aap

Use any appropriate time in the answer.

Instructor: yahãã-see jaanaa
1st Student: aap yahãã-see kab jaaẽẽgee(ii).
2nd Student: kal šaam-koo.

Instructor: taaj mahal deekhnaa
2nd Student: aap taaj mahal kab deekhẽẽgii.
3rd Student: doo ghanTee-mẽẽ.

G. Conversational response drill: ham

Instructor	Class
Everybody sees the Taj Mahal.	Then we'll see it, too.
sab loog taaj mahal deekhtee hãĩ.	too ham loog bhii deekhẽẽgee.
saab loog šahar-mẽẽ ghuumtee hãĩ.	ghuumẽẽgee.
sab loog aagree-mẽẽ Thairtee hãĩ.	Thairẽẽgee.
sab loog aagree-kee ḳilee-koo jaataa hãĩ.	jaaẽẽgee.
sab loog saRak-par sãbhaltee hãĩ.	sãbhalẽẽgee.
sab loog rikšaa bulaatee hãĩ.	bulaaẽẽgee.
sab loog miThaaii ḳhariidtee hãĩ.	ḳhariidẽẽgee.
sab loog paanii piitee hãĩ.	piiẽẽgee.
sab loog rikšaa-mẽẽ ghuumtee	ghuumẽẽgee.
sab loog ḳhaas jaghẽẽ deekhtee hãĩ.	deekhẽẽgee.
sab loog hindii paRhtee hãĩ.	paRhẽẽgee.
sab loog santree khaatee hãĩ.	khaaẽẽgee.

H. Substitution drill

Substitute the examples in Drill G.

sab loog (taaj mahal deekhtee hãĩ).

I. Chain drill: ham

Repeat Drill G as a chain drill.

Instructor:	taaj mahal deekhnaa	seeing the Taj Mahal
1st Student:	sab loog taaj mahal deekhtee hãĩ.	Everyone sees the Taj Mahal.
2nd Student:	too ham bhii deekhẽẽgee.	Then I'll see it, too.

J. Substitution-agreement drill: hoogaa(ii)

When will the sandal be ready?

(cappal) kab taiyaar hoogii.
ḳamiiz
juutaa
blaauz
saaRii
kapRaa
dhootii

K. Substitution-agreement drill: hõõgee(ii)

When will the dhotis be ready?

(dhootiyãã) kab taiyaar hõõgii.
kapRee
paijaamee
saaRiyãã
juutee
blaauzẽẽ
ḳamiizẽẽ
cappal

L. Substitution-agrement drill:
hoogaa(ee, ii)

The kurtas will be ready at 2:30.

(kurtee) Dhaaii bajee taiyaar hõõgee.

kurtaa
saaRiyãã
saaRii
kapRaa
ḳamiizẽẽ
juutee
paijaamee
dhootii
blaauz
aap-kii cappal
dhootiyãã
aap-kii capplẽẽ

M. Substitution-agrement drill

You'll get 12 annas.

(baarah aanee) milẽẽgee.

eek paisaa
acchii saaRii
naii ḳamiizẽẽ
ThanDaa paanii
das rupaee
dhootiyãã
kaag̣az
pensil
kaag̣az pensil
kuch kapRee
miThaaiyãã
dhulaaii
ikkiis paisee

N. Chain drill

Instructor:	baarah aanee	12 annas
1st Student:	aap-koo kyaa caahiyee.	What do you want?
2nd Student:	baarah aanee caahiyẽẽ.	I want 12 annas.
1st Student:	too baarah aanee milẽẽgee.	Then you'll get 12 annas.
Instructor:	eek paisaa	
2nd Student:	aap-koo kyaa caahiyee.	
3rd Student:	eek paisaa caahiyee.	
2nd Student:	too eek paisaa mileegaa.	

O. Individual response drill

All questions in this drill are based on the conversations bairee-koo bulaanaa and dhoobii-kaa kapRee laanaa. Only minimum answers are to be given.

Instructor:	kaun aadmii kapRee dhooeegaa.	Who will wash the clothes?
1st Student:	dhoobii.	The washerman.
Instructor:	kaun aadmii dhoobii-kii madad kareegaa.	
2nd Student:	yee aadmii.	

Instructor: wideešii-koo ghar kab pahũcnaa hõõgaa.
wideešii-koo kapRee kab milẽẽgee.
kin aadmiyõõ-koo jaldii hoogii.
kaun aadmii kapRee laaeegaa.
dhoobii paijaamee-koo kahãã deekheegaa.
dhoobii kaun saa kapRaa saaf kar deegaa.
kaun baaḳii waapas kar jaaeegaa.

3. The saknaa construction

The auxiliary verb saknaa, when preceded by the root of another verb, corresponds to the English 'to be able.' saknaa may appear in all verb tense forms:

doo ghanTee-mẽẽ šahar dikhaa sakoogee?
ḳaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hũũ.

The negative particle nahĩĩ precedes the verb root.

itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktee.

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Give this much.	I can't give that much.
itnaa deenaa.	itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktee.
itnaa leenaa.	itnaa nahĩĩ lee
wahãã calnaa.	wahãã nahĩĩ cal
ḳilee jaanaa.	ḳilee nahĩĩ jaa
saRak-par ruknaa.	saRak-par nahĩĩ ruk
dukaan-mẽẽ deekhnaa.	dukaan-mẽẽ nahĩĩ deekh
urduu likhnaa.	urduu nahĩĩ likh
yahãã rahnaa.	rahãã nahĩĩ rah
itnaa bataanaa.	itnaa nahĩĩ bataa
jaldii boolnaa.	jaldii nahĩĩ bool
sab dikhaanaa.	sab nahĩĩ dikhaa

B. Conversational response drill: men

wideešii	rikšee-waalaa
Who can show me the important buildings?	_I_ can show you the important buildings.
kaun aadmii ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hai.	mãĩ hii ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hũũ.
kaun taaj mahal lee cal saktaa hai.	taaj mahal lee cal
kaun saaree šahar-mẽẽ ghuum saktaa hai.	saaree šahar-mẽẽ ghuum
kaun miThaaii ḳhariid saktaa hai.	miThaaii ḳhariid
kaun yahãã-kee ḳilee-koo jaa saktaa hai.	yahãã-kee ḳilee-koo jaa
kaun das aanee lee saktaa hai.	das aanee lee
kaun jaldii waapas jaa saktaa hai.	jaldii waapas jaa
kaun angreezii bool saktaa hai.	angreezii bool

C. Conversational response drill: women

Repeat Drill B.

wideešii	laRkii
kaun ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hai.	mãĩ hii ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktii hũũ.

D. Transformation drill: -_gaa_ to _hai_ forms

Instructor	Class
He will be able to show all the important buildings.	He can show all the important buildings.
woo ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakeegaa.	woo ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hai.
aap ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakẽẽgee.	saktee hãĩ.
woo ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakẽẽgee.	saktee hãĩ.
tum ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakoogee.	saktee hoo.
tum ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakoogii.	saktii hoo.
aap ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakẽẽgii.	saktii hãĩ.
ham ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakẽẽgee.	saktee hãĩ.
woo ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakẽẽgii.	saktii hãĩ.
woo ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa sakeegii.	saktii hai.

E. Transformation drill: _hai_ to -_gaa_ forms

Repeat Drill D in reverse.

F. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Will the ricksha driver show the whole city?	No, he can't show the whole city.
kyaa woo rikšee-waalaa saaraa šahar dikhaaeegaa?	nahĩĩ, saaraa too nahĩĩ dikhaa sakeegaa.
kyaa wideešii saaraa šahar deekheegaa?	saaraa too nahĩĩ deekh sakeegaa.
kyaa meem saahab sab kapRee dhooẽẽgii?	sab too nahĩĩ dhoo sakẽẽgii.
kyaa dhoobii sab kapRee saaf kar deegaa?	sab too nahĩĩ saaf kar sakeegaa.
kyaa aap-kii laRkii saaraa papiitaa khaaeegii?	saaraa too nahĩĩ khaa sakeegii.
kyaa woo saahab baazaar-kaa paanii piyẽẽgee?	baazaar-kaa too nahĩĩ pii sakẽẽgee.
kyaa moocii apnee juutõõ-par paališ kar dẽẽgee?	apnee too nahĩĩ paališ kar sakẽẽgee.
kyaa meem saahab laal saaRii khariidẽẽgii?	laal too nahĩĩ khariid sakẽẽgii.
kyaa woo saahab doo rikšee bulaaẽẽgee?	doo too nahĩĩ bulaa sakẽẽgee.
kyaa yee widyaarthii zyaadaa hindii booleegii?	zyaadaa too nahĩĩ bool sakeegii.
kyaa woo rikšee-waalaa bahut paisaa leegaa?	bahut too nahĩĩ lee sakeegaa.
kyaa yee laRkiyãã bahut urduu paRhẽẽgii.	bahut too nahĩĩ paRh sakẽẽgii.

4. Compound verb constructions

The meaning of a verb is frequently modified by the use of an auxiliary which follows the verbal root and is inflected for tense, person, number and gender in the same way that saknaa is.

zaraa un-par paališ bhii kar deenaa.
isee saaf kar dẽẽgee.
aap un-koo likh liijiyee.
andar aa jaaoo.
kidhar lee calẽẽ.

Since it is impossible to predict which verbs can be compounded, each compound must be learned separately.

The most frequent auxiliaries are deenaa and leenaa, which tend to occur with transitive verbs (i.e., verbs that can take an object, such as saaf karnaa, likhnaa) and jaanaa with intransitive verbs (such as aanaa, baiThnaa). An exception to this is waapas karnaa 'to bring back,' a transitive verb that compounds with jaanaa: waapas kar jaanaa.

Some compound verb constructions have no simple verb correspondents, e.g., lee calnaa 'to take' and lee aanaa 'to bring.' Others, such as kar deenaa and likh leenaa simply serve to intensify the meaning of the verb root. When both leenaa and deenaa can be used with a particular verb, leenaa has the connotation 'for one's self' while deenaa has the connotation 'for someone else.'

A. Transformation drill: compound to simple verb

Instructor	Class
Come here.	Come here.
idhar aa jaaoo.	idhar aaoo.
kyaa aap itnaa dee dẽẽgee?	kyaa aap itnaa dẽẽgee?
eek seeb khaa liijiyee.	eek seeb khaaiyee.
paanii pii-kar aa jaataa hũũ.	paanii pii-kar aataa hũũ.
sab taiyaar hai, deekh loo.	sab taiyaar hai, deekhoo.
isee bilkul saaf kar dũũgaa.	isee bilkul saaf karũũgaa.
eek ghanTee-mẽẽ dee deetaa hũũ.	eek ghanTee-mẽẽ deetaa hũũ.
in ciizõõ-koo gin loo.	in ciizõõ-koo ginoo.
juutee-koo deekh liijiyee.	juutee-koo deekhiyee.
mãĩ thooRii hindii bool leetaa hũũ.	mãĩ thooRii hindii booltaa hũũ.

B. Conversational response drill: men

Instructor	Men
Fix this.	I'll fix it right away.
isee Thiik kar deenaa.	abhii kar deetaa hũũ.
kapRõõ-koo gin leenaa.	gin leetaa hũũ.
isee bataa deenaa.	bataa deetaa hũũ.
apnee paisee lee leenaa.	lee leetaa hũũ.
isee deekh leenaa.	deekh leetaa hũũ.
ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa deenaa.	dikhaa deetaa hũũ.

C. Conversational response drill: women

Repeat Drill B.

Instructor	Women
isee Thiik kar deenaa.	abhii kar deetii hũũ.

D. Conversational response drill: class

Repeat Drill B, changing the class response.

Instructor	Class
Fix this.	O.K., we'll fix it.
isee Thiik kar deenaa.	acchaa, Thiik kar dẽẽgee.

5. *itnaa*, *utnaa*

The marked adjectives *itnaa* and *utnaa* 'this much, many,' 'that much, many' are related to *kitnaa* in the same way that *yee* and *woo* are to *kyaa*, *yahãã* and *wahãã* to *kahãã* and *idhar*, *udhar* to *kidhar*.

itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktaa.
yahãã-kaa reeT too *utnaa* hii hai.

Note that in the conversation, the first example is translated as 'I can't give that much.' In English we usually use _that_ for that which the person we are speaking to says and _this_ for that which we as the speaker say. In Hindi _yee_ and _itnaa_ are used for that which has just been mentioned by either speaker; _woo_ and _utnaa_, for that which has not been recently mentioned.

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Give a rupee.	We can't give that much.
eek rupayaa diijiyee.	itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktee.
eek papiitaa khaaiyee.	khaa saktee.
sab paanii piijiyee.	pii saktee.
sab kapRaa ḳhariidiyee.	ḳhariid saktee.
saaraa šahar dikhaaiyee.	dikhaa saktee.
sab khaanaa khaaiyee.	khaa saktee.

B. Substitution-agreement drill

He can give this much money.	Can you give that much money?
itnaa (_paisaa_) dee saktaa hai.	_utnaa_ (_paisaa_) dee saktee hãĩ?
keelee	peeRee
saaRiyãã	paanii
rupaee	paališ
paisaa	kaam
khaanaa	papiitee
miThaaii	miThaaiyãã

C. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Wash five shirts.	We can't wash that many.
pããc ḳamiizẽẽ dhooiyee.	itnii nahĩĩ dhoo sakẽẽgee.
eek rupayaa diijiyee.	itnaa nahĩĩ dee
doo keelee khaanaa.	itnee nahĩĩ khaa
sab paanii piijiyee.	itnaa nahĩĩ pii
saaraa šahar dikhaaiyee.	itnaa nahĩĩ dikhaa
das miThaaiyãã khaaiyee.	itnii nahĩĩ khaa
caar juutee Thiik kiijiyee.	itnee nahĩĩ Thiik kar
eek papiitaa khaaiyee.	itnaa nahĩĩ khaa
ikkiis rupaee diijiyee.	itnee nahĩĩ dee
sab jaghẽẽ deekhiyee.	itnii nahĩĩ deekh

D. Chain drill

In the last sentence, any appropriate verb may be used.

Instructor:	paisaa	money
1st Student:	kitnaa paisaa hoogaa.	How much will it be?
2nd Student:	eek ghanTee-kaa eek rupayaa.	A rupee an hour.
1st Student:	itnaa nahĩĩ dee saktaa.	I can't give that much.

Instructor: kapRee
2nd Student: kitnee kapRee hõõgee.
3rd Student: saat ḳamiizẽẽ.
2nd Student: itnii nahĩĩ dhoo saktii.

Instructor: juutee
3rd Student: kitnee juutee hõõgee.
4th Student: caar juutee.
3rd Student: itnee nahĩĩ Thiik kar (ḳhariid, etc.) saktaa.

Instructor: kapRaa
miThaaii
rupaee
saaRiyãã
khaanaa
keelee
jaghẽẽ

6. The particles hii, bhii, nahĩĩ

The emphatic particle hii, like bhii and nahĩĩ, may follow any word in the sentence. The word that it follows is the word that it emphasizes. Unlike bhii and nahĩĩ, however, hii may interrupt a sequence of noun plus postposition.

reeT too utnaa hii hai.
tumhaaraa hii intizaar kar rahii thii.
kilee hii-see šuruu karẽẽgee. We'll start right from the fort.

The h of hii is dropped after is, us and kis.

meeraa paijaamaa isii-mẽẽ hai. My pajamas are right in here.

nahĩĩ is a combination of the negative particle na and hii; abhii is a combination of ab 'now' and hii.

A. Conversational response drill: hii

Instructor	Class
Will that man explain?	Yes, he's just the one to explain.
kyaa woo aadmii bataaeegaa?	hãã, woo aadmii hii bataaeegaa.
dhoobii saaf kar deegaa?	dhoobii hii saaf kar deegaa.
meem saahab angreezii boolẽẽgii?	meem saahab hii boolẽẽgii.
bairaa kapRee dhulaaeegaa?	bairaa hii dhulaaeegaa.
woo wideešii taaj mahal deekheegaa?	woo wideešii hii deekheegaa.
woo laRkee miThaaii khaaẽẽgee?	woo laRkee hii khaaẽẽgee.
Tiicar jawaab dẽẽgee?	Tiicar hii jawaab dẽẽgee.
yee laRkii hindii paRheegii?	yee laRkii hii paRheegii.

B. Chain drill: isii, usii

Complete the postpositional phrase given by the instructor with any appropriate ending.

Instructor:	is ḳamiiz-par	on this shirt.
1st Student:	is ḳamiiz-par dhabbee hãĩ.	There are spots on this shirt.
2nd Student:	kis ḳamiiz-par.	On which shirt?
1st Student:	isii ḳamiiz-par.	On this shirt here.

Instructor:	us dukaan-mẽẽ
2nd Student:	us dukaan-mẽẽ banaarsii saaRiyãã milẽẽgii.
3rd Student:	kis dukaan-mẽẽ.
2nd Student:	usii dukaan-mẽẽ.

Instructor:
is kursii-par
us ghar-mẽẽ
us kamree-mẽẽ
is meez-par
is rikšee-mẽẽ
us baazaar-mẽẽ
is saRak-par
us kurtee-par

C. Substitution drill: bhii

Will you wait for me, too?

(meeraa) bhii intizaar karẽẽgee?
us dhoobii-kaa
us-kaa
singh saahab-kaa
un-kaa
is bairee-kaa
is-kaa

D. Additive drill: hii

This drill is done in the same way as the substitution drill above.

Instructor	Class
for you	We'll wait just for you.
tumhaaraa	tumhaaraa hii intizaar karẽẽgee.
aap-kaa	aap hii-kaa
us dhoobii-kaa	us dhoobii hii-kaa
us-kaa	usii-kaa
singh saahab	singh saahab hii-kaa
un-kaa	un hii-kaa
is bairee-kaa	is bairee hii-kaa
is-kaa	isii-kaa
aap loogõõ-kaa	aap loogõõ hii-kaa

E. Chain drill: hii

Instructor:	madad karnaa	help
1st Student:	aap kis-kii madad karẽẽgee.	Who will you help?
2nd Student:	dhoobii-kii	The washerman.
1st Student:	dhoobii-kii?	The washerman?!
2nd Student:	jii hãã, dhoobii hii-kii madad karũũgaa(ii).	Yes, I said the washerman.

Instructor: puuchanaa
2nd Student: kis-see puuchẽẽgee.
3rd Student: us aadmii-see.
2nd Student: us aadmii-see?
3rd Student: jii hãã, usii-see. (or) jii hãã, us aadmii hii-see.

Instructor:
bulaanaa
deekhnaa
boolnaa
baat ciit karnaa
intizaar karnaa
bataanaa
kahnaa
sunnaa

F. Conversational response drill: bhii nahĩĩ

Instructor	Class
I'm not going to go.	Then I'm not going to go either.
mãĩ nahĩĩ jaaũũgaa.	too ham bhii nahĩĩ jaaẽẽgee.
mãĩ nahĩĩ piyũũgaa.	piyẽẽgee.
mãĩ nahĩĩ khaaũũgaa.	khaaẽẽgee.
mãĩ ḳilaa nahĩĩ deekhũũgaa.	ḳilaa deekhẽẽgee.
mãĩ rikšaa nahĩĩ bulaaũũgaa.	rikšaa bulaaẽẽgee.
mãĩ kapRee nahĩĩ dhooũũgaa.	kapRee dhooẽẽgee.
mãĩ baazaar-mẽẽ nahĩĩ ghuumũũgaa.	baazaar-mẽẽ ghuumẽẽgee.
mãĩ is saRak-par nahĩĩ rukũũgaa.	is saRak-par rukẽẽgee.
mãĩ eek minaT nahĩĩ Thairũũgaa.	eek minaT Thairẽẽgee.

7. -see in comparisons

-see when followed by an adjective is equivalent to the English 'than.' In contrast to English, the Hindi adjective following -see does not take any special comparative endings, but it does agree with the subject.

yee too reeT-see zyaadaa hai.	But this is more than the rate.
yee too reeT-see kam hai.	But this is less than the rate.
papiitee seeb-see baRee hãĩ.	Papayas are bigger than apples.
ghar ḳilee-see chooTaa hai.	A house is smaller than a fort.

A. Substitution drill

That's more than the rate.

yee (reeT)-see zyaadaa hai.
seer
rupaee
eek aanee
eek ghanTee

B. Substitution drill

That's less than the rate.

yee (reeT)-see kam hai.

Use the substitutions in Drill A.

C. Individual response drill

Try to use an item in the same category as that given by the instructor.

Instructor: papiitaa kis-see baRaa hai. A papaya is bigger than what?
1st Student: papiitaa seeb-see baRaa hai. A papaya is bigger than an apple.

Instructor: peeRee kis-see baRee hãĩ.
2nd Student: peeRee khurcan-see baRee hãĩ.

Instructor: saaRii kis-see baRii hai.
ḳilaa kis-see baRaa hai.
aadmii kis-see baRee hãĩ.
taaj mahal kis-see baRaa hai.
dillii kis-see baRii hai.
dillii šahar kis-see baRaa hai.
hindustaan kis-see baRaa hai.
keelee kis-see baRee hãĩ.
dhootii kis-see baRii hai.

D. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Is two rupees more or less than one rupee?	It's more.
kyaa doo rupaee eek rupaee-see zyaadaa hãĩ.	hãã, zyaadaa hãĩ.
kyaa aadhaa seer doo seer-see zyaadaa hãĩ.	nahĩĩ, kam hai.
kyaa tiin ghanTee DeeRh ghanTee-see kam hãĩ.	nahĩĩ, zyaadaa hãĩ.
kyaa DeeRh minaT Dhaaii minaT-see kam hai?	hãã, kam hai.
khurcan peeRee-see baRii hai yaa chooTii.	chooTii hai.
ḳilaa ghar-see baRaa hai yaa chooTaa.	baRaa hai.
laRkee aadmiyõõ-see baRee hãĩ yaa chooTee.	chooTee hãĩ.
saaRii blaauz-see baRii hai yaa chooTii.	baRii hai.
mathuraa dillii-see baRaa hai yaa chooTaa.	chooTaa hai.

E. Chain drill

Instructor:	kyaa dhootii moozee-see baRii hai?	Is a dhoti larger than a sock?
1st Student:	hãã, baRii hai.	Yes, it's larger.
1st Student:	kyaa aadhaa nayaa paisaa eek paisee-see zyaadaa hai?	
2nd Student:	nahĩĩ, kam hai.	
2nd Student:	seeb papiitee-see baRaa hai yaa chooTaa.	
3rd Student:	chooTaa hai.	

8. The adverbial oblique; directional postpositions

Destination may be indicated either by -*koo* or by an oblique noun construction without -*koo*. The modifiers of this oblique noun are also in the oblique. The adverbial oblique as a rule refers to a generalized destination, i.e., one that one goes to frequently, as in English 'to town,' 'to market,' etc. -*koo* is used to make the destination more specific. It is therefore more frequent when the destination is preceded by a qualifying adjective.

ḳilee calẽẽgee.	Let's go to the fort.
us-*ḳilee*-*koo* calẽẽgee.	Let's go to that fort.
angree-*kee* *ḳilee*-*koo* calẽẽgee.	Let's go to the Agra fort.

With verbs of motion, -*see* is the most common equivalent of the English 'from.' Another directional postposition is -*tak* 'as far as, up to' ('until' when used in time expressions). -*kii* *taraf* is a postpositional phrase meaning 'in the direction of.' It is more specific than -*koo*.

aap kab *yahãã*-*see* jaa rahii hãĩ.	
ḳilee-*tak* calẽẽgee.	We'll go as far as the fort.
taaj *mahal*-*kii* *taraf*?	

A. Substitution drill: -kii taraf

We'll start off in the direction of the fort.

(ḳilee)-kii taraf calẽẽgee.
taaj mahal
ghar
aagree
dillii
baazaar
cããdnii cauk

B. Transformation drill: oblique noun to oblique noun plus -koo

Instructor	Class
We'll go to the fort.	We'll go to that fort.
ḳilee calẽẽgee.	us ḳilee-koo calẽẽgee.
baazaar calẽẽgee.	us baazaar-koo
hooTal calẽẽgee.	us hooTal-koo
ghar calẽẽgee.	us ghar-koo
šahar calẽẽgee.	us šahar-koo
kapRee-kii dukaan calẽẽgee.	us kapRee-kii dukaan-koo

C. Transformation drill: oblique noun plus -koo to oblique noun

Repeat Drill B in reverse.

Instructor	Class
us ḳilee-koo calẽẽgee.	ḳilee calẽẽgee.

D. Individual transformation drill: oblique noun to oblique noun plus -koo

Repeat Drill B with each student supplying a modifier of his choice. Note that the unmarked nouns may be interpreted as either singular or plural

Instructor:	ḳilee calẽẽgee.	We'll go to the fort.
1st Student:	aagree-kee ḳilee-koo calẽẽgee.	We'll go to the fort in Agra.
Instructor:	baazaar calẽẽgee.	
2nd Student:	yahãã-kee baazaar-koo calẽẽgee.	
Instructor:	Continue with the sentences in Drill B.	

E. Substitution drill: -see

When are you leaving Agra?

aap-kab (aagree)-see jaa rahii hãĩ.
hooTal
dillii
nainiitaal
baazaar
ghar
yahãã

F. Conversational response drill: -see

rikšee-waalaa	saahab
This fort is a very good.	Then we'll start right from the fort.
yee ḳilaa bahut acchaa hai.	too is ḳilee-see hii šuruu karẽẽgee.
woo baazaar bahut baRaa hai.	us baazaar-see
yee hooTal bahut nayaa hai.	is hooTal-see
dillii bahut baRaa šahar hai.	dillii-see
yee dukaanẽẽ bahut chooTii hãĩ.	in dukaanõõ-see
woo saRkẽẽ bahut siidhii hãĩ.	un saRkõõ-see
taaj mahal bahut sundar hai.	taaj mahal-see

Rapid Response

Group 1

wideešii kis šahar-mẽẽ hãĩ.
aagraa kahãã hai.
rikšee-kaa eek ghanTee-kaa kyaa reeT hai.
kyaa eek rupayaa reeT-see zyaadaa hai?
wideešii eek ghanTee-kaa kitnaa dẽẽgee.
wideešii-koo kahãã ghuumnaa hai.
kyaa rikšee-waalaa doo ghanTee-mẽẽ saaraa šahar dikhaa saktaa hai?
kyaa paanii garam hai.
rikšee-waalee-koo kyaa bhuukh lagtii hai?
wideešii kahãã-see šahar deekhnaa šuruu kartee hãĩ.
kyaa wideešii-koo garmii lagtii hai?

Group 2

wideešii kis-see baat ciit kar rahee hãĩ.
kyaa baarah aanee reeT-see kam hãĩ?
kyaa wideešii taaj mahal-kii taraf jaa rahee hãĩ?
rikšee-waalaa doo ghanTee-mẽẽ kaun-sii jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktaa hai.
paanii kaisaa hai.
kyaa wideešii-koo deer hoo rahii hai?
kyaa rikšaa dhiiree cal rahaa hai?
kisee garmii lagtii hai.
kyaa wideešii ḳilee jaa rahee hãĩ?
taaj mahal kis šahar-mẽẽ hai.

Review Conversations

Beginning with this unit, substitutions will no longer be suggested. Each conversation is first practiced in class. Students will then improvise short free conversations on similar topics.

saRak-par

1. A: ai rikšaa, idhar aanaa.

B: hãã saahab, kahãã calnaa hai.

A: ḳilee jaanaa hai. kitnaa paisaa hoogaa.

B: wahãã-kaa reeT eek rupayaa hai.

A: acchaa caloo, magar dhiiree calnaa.

2. A: sunoo, ḳilee jaanee-kaa kyaa reeT hai.

B: eek rupayaa.

A: aaTh aanee dũũgaa, zyaadaa nahĩĩ dee saktaa.

B: nahĩĩ saahab, yee too reeT-see bahut kam hai. acchaa, baarah aanee diijiyee, g̣ariib aadmii hũũ.

A: acchaa. caloo.

3. A: ai rikšaa, rukoo. mujhee thooRaa paanii piinaa hai. kyaa yahãã-kaa paanii acchaa hai?

B: nahĩĩ saahab, aap-loog nahĩĩ pii saktee.

A: too acchaa paanii kahãã mileegaa.

B: udhar, hooTal-mẽẽ mileegaa.

baat ciit

4. A: suniyee singh saahab, kyaa aap-koo kuch samay hai?

B: kyaa karnaa hai.

A: mujhee šahar-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa. calẽẽgee?

B: acchaa, mãĩ aap-koo šahar dikhaa saktaa hũũ.

A: kahãã-see šuruu karẽẽgee.

B: pahlee ḳilee jaaẽẽgee aur phir baazaar calẽẽgee.

5. A: aaiyee šarmaa jii, yahãã baiThiyee, kursii-par.

B: namastee singh saahab, abhii nahĩĩ baiTh saktaa.

A: kyõõ, kyaa baat hai.

B: mujhee jaldii hai, baazaar jaanaa hai.

A: acchaa, thooRaa ThanDaa paanii too piijiyee. bahut garmii hai.

6. A: suniyee, aap-koo yahãã-see kab jaanaa hai.
B: kal saweeree jaanaa hai.
A: kahãã jaaẽẽgee.
B: pahlee dillii aur phir nainiitaal jaaũũgaa.
A: nainiitaal kab-tak pahũcnaa hai.
B: parsõõ-tak zaruur pahũcnaa hai.

Unit III Part B

Conversation

1 saamaan uThaanee-kee liyee kulii.
2 dillii, sTeešan-par.

---

3 wideešii: ai kulii, mooTar-kee piichee-see saamaan nikaaloo.
4 yee kaalaa bakas meeree saath nahĩĩ jaaeegaa.
5 kulii: kuch aur too nahĩĩ hai mooTar-kee andar saahab?
6 wideešii: nahĩĩ, bas yahii caar ciizẽẽ hãĩ.

---

7 kulii: kis gaaRii-see jaanaa hai saahab.
8 wideešii: duun ekspres-see, joo sahaaranpur ruktii hoo.
9 yee halkaa-waalaa jhoolaa mujhee dee doo. isee apnee saath rakhũũgaa.
10 kulii: meeree piichee aaiyee saahab.
11 TikaT too nahĩĩ leenaa hoogaa?
12 wideešii: TikaT too hai meeree paas.
13 gaaRii leeT too nahĩĩ hoogii?
14 kulii: jii nahĩĩ, saat nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par khaRii hai.

---

15 kis klaas-mẽẽ lee calũũ? farsT klaas-mẽẽ?
16 wideešii: hãã. šaayad aagee hoo. pichlii baar aagee hii thii.
17 kulii: is-mẽẽ jagah hai saahab. saamaan andar lee calũũ?
18 wideešii: bistar bhii bakas-kee paas uupar rakh doo, sãbhaal-kar.
19 kitnii mazduurii huii.
20 kulii: joo bhii aap-kii marzii hoo saahab.
21 wideešii: acchaa, loo eek rupayaa loo.
22 kyaa yee khiRkii band hai?
23 yaatrii: hãã. agar aap-koo zaruurat hoo, too khool dũũ.
24 wideešii: baRii meharbaanii.

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

wideešii	A Westerner (m/f)
kulii	A porter (m)
yaatrii	A traveller, passenger (m/f)

	saamaan	baggage; stuff (things) (m)
	uThaanaa	to lift, to carry
	uThaanee-kee liyee	for carrying
1	saamaan uThaanee-kee liyee kulii.	Porters to carry luggage.
	sTeešan	train station (m)
2	dillii, sTeešan-par.	Delhi, at the station.
	mooTar	car (f)
	piichaa	the rear (m)
	-kee piichee	behind
	mooTar-kee piichee	from behind the car
	nikaalnaa	to take out
3 W:	ai kulii, mooTar-kee piichee-see saamaan nikaaloo.	Hey, porter, take the luggage out from behind.
	kaalaa	black (adj)
	bakas	box (m)
	meeree saath	with me
	jaaeegaa	will go
4 W:	yee kaalaa bakas meeree saath nahĩĩ jaaeegaa.	This black box doesn't go with me.
	kuch aur	something else
5 K:	kuch aur too nahĩĩ hai mooTar-kee andar saahab?	Isn't there anything else in the car, sir?
	yahii	yee-hii
6 W:	nahĩĩ, bas yahii caar ciizẽẽ hãĩ.	No, there are only these four pieces.
	gaaRii	vehicle
	gaaRii-see	by train
7 K:	kis gaaRii-see jaanaa hai saahab.	Which train are you going by, sir?
	duun	Dehra Doon (a town) (m)
	ekspres	express (f)
	joo	which (pron)
	sahaaranpur	Saharanpur (a town) (m)
	ruktii hoo	probably stops
8 W:	duun ekspres-see, joo sahaaranpur ruktii hoo.	By the Doon Express, which stops at Saharanpur.

	halkaa	light (adj)
	halkaa-waalaa	light one (adj)
	jhoolaa	bag
	dee deenaa	to give (emphatic)
9 W:	yee halkaa-waalaa jhoolaa mujhee dee doo.	Give me this light bag.
	apnee saath	with oneself
	rakhnaa	to keep
	rakhũũgaa	will keep
	isee apnee saath rakhũũgaa.	I'll keep it with me.
	meeree piichee	behind me
10 K:	meeree piichee aaiyee saahab.	Please follow me, sir.
	TikaT	ticket (m)
11 K:	TikaT too nahĩĩ leenaa hoogaa?	You don't have to get a ticket?
	meeree paas	with me
12 W:	TikaT too hai meeree paas.	I have the ticket.
	leeT	late (adj)
13 W:	gaaRii leeT too nahĩĩ hoogii?	The train won't be late, will it?
	pleeTfaarm	platform (m)
	khaRaa	standing (adj)
	khaRaa hoonaa	to stand
14 K:	jii nahĩĩ, saat nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par khaRii hai.	No, sir, it's on platform 7.
	lee calnaa	to take to
	farsT klaas	first class
	farsT klaas-mẽẽ	into first class
15 K:	kis klaas-mẽẽ lee calũũ? farsT klaas-mẽẽ?	Which class should I take them to? To first class?
	šaayad	perhaps (adv)
	aagee	in front (adv)
	pichlaa	last, previous (adj)
	baar	occasion (f)
16 W:	hãã. šaayad aagee hoo. pichlii baar aagee hii thii.	Yes. Maybe it's in front. Last time it was in front.
17 K:	is-mẽẽ jagah hai saahab. saamaan andar lee calũũ?	There's a space in here, sir. Shall I take the bags in?

	bistar	bedding (m)
	-kee paas	near
	rakh deenaa	to put down (emphatic)
	sãbhaalnaa	to be careful
	sãbhaal-kar	carefully
18 W:	bistar bhii bakas-kee paas uupar rakh doo, sãbhaal-kar.	Put the bedding up, too, near the suitcase, carefully.
	mazduur	laborer (m)
	mazduurii	labor charges (f)
19 W:	kitnii mazduurii huii.	How much is it?
	marzii	wish
	joo bhii aap-kii marzii hoo	whatever your wish might be
20 K:	joo bhii aap-kii marzii hoo saahab.	Whatever you'd like to give, sir.
21 W:	acchaa, loo eek rupayaa loo.	O.K. Here, take a rupee.
	khiRkii	window
	band	closed (adj)
22	kyaa yee khiRkii band hai?	Is this window closed?
	agar	if (conj)
	zaruurat	need, desire (f)
	aap-koo zaruurat hai	you need
	aap-koo zaruurat hoo	you might need
	khoolnaa	to open
	khool deenaa	to open (emphatic)
	khool dũũ	I might open
23 Y:	agar aap-koo zaruurat hoo, too khool dũũ.	If you wish I'll open it.
24 W:	baRii meharbaanii.	Thanks a lot.

Cultural Notes

The train is the most usual form of transportation in India. The station and platform present a scene of bustling activity where Indians of all walks of life, from village and city alike, meet and mingle. Vendors with baskets or wheeled carts patrol the platform, selling food, newspapers and trinkets to passengers through the open windows of the train. Coolies (kulii) can be recognized by their distinctive red kurtaa and turban, despite the milling crowds.

There are three classes of passage on an Indian train. First class, the most comfortable and spacious, is used by higher government officials, businessmen and other well-to-do city folk. Second or inter-class is used by less affluent educated middle class and government servants; and third class is generally occupied by villagers. Indian railroads are state-operated. Recently the Government has made available modern, air-conditioned coaches at third-class rates principally for the use of lower-echelon government servants travelling to their homes or on vacation. These are now frequented by all classes of people.

The traveller on an Indian train usually carries his own bedroll (bistar) for an overnight trip. This is spread out for the night on the coach benches, which are designed to be wide enough for this purpose; the Pullman is unknown in India.

Since railroads and train travel were introduced by the British, much English vocabulary is still associated with them in colloquial speech, although literary equivalents for these terms do exist in written Hindi. Thus in this lesson we meet such expressions as express (ekspres), late (leeT), ticket (TikaT), number (nambar), platform (pleeTfarm), and first class (farsT klaas).

Word Study

1. Related pairs

andar	inside	baahar	outside
piichee	behind	aagee	in front
uupar	above	niicee	below
leeT	late	jaldii	early
halkaa	light	bhaarii	heavy
band	closed	khulaa	open
band karnaa	to close	khoolnaa	to open

2. Adjectives, adverbs and postpositional phrases of time and place

time

pahlaa	first	pahlee	at first	-kee pahlee	before
duusraa	next	baad-mẽẽ	afterwards	-kee baad	afterwards

place

aglaa(ee, ii)	next	aagee	in front	-kee aagee	in front of
pichlaa(ee, ii)	last	piichee	in back	-kee piichee	in back of
niicaa(ee, ii)	low	niicee	below	-kee niicee	below

pichlii baar aagee hii thii.
pahlii baar aagee hii thii.
aglii baar aagee hii hoogii.
duusrii baar aagee hii hoogii.

šaayad aagee hoo.
šaayad piichee hoo.
šaayad niicee hoo.

3. Causative verbs

Simple		Causative	
deekhnaa	to look, to see	dikhaanaa	to show
dhoonaa	to wash	dhulaanaa	to have washed
boolnaa	to speak	bulaanaa	to call
nikalnaa	to come out	nikaalnaa	to take out
sãbhalnaa	to be careful for oneself	sãbhaalnaa	to exercise care
lagnaa	to be applied, felt	lagaanaa	to apply
uThnaa	to rise, get up	uThaanaa	to raise, lift
ruknaa	to stop (intr)	rooknaa	to stop
khulnaa	to be opened	khoolnaa	to open
paRhnaa	to read, study	paRhaanaa	to teach
calnaa	to move	calaanaa	to drive

While each of these forms must be learned separately, certain similarities can be noted; e.g., the causative either has aa or a long root vowel.

4. Compound verbs with special meaning

leenaa	to take, catch hold, accept	rakhnaa	to put, keep
lee calnaa	to take something somewhere	rakh deenaa	to put down
laanaa	to bring		
lee aanaa	to bring something somewhere		

Pronunciation Drills

1. Stop plus consonant

A. Imitation drill

apnaa
jhapnaa
thaapnaa

utnaa
itnaa
kitnaa

paathnaa
mathnaa

phaTnaa
paTnaa
pleeTfaarm

uThnaa
baiThnaa

pahũcnaa
beecnaa
bacnaa
pacnaa

khiinchnaa
puuchnaa

saknaa
ruknaa
rooknaa

rakhnaa
likhnaa
deekhnaa

duubnaa
phabnaa

cubhnaa

aadmii
cããdnii

sadhnaa
baandhnaa

DhũũDhnaa

bajnaa
bhajnaa

samajhnaa
suujhnaa

lagnaa
jagnaa

sũũghnaa

B. Imitation drill

jhaptaa------	jhaptee------	jhaptii
thaaptaa	thaaptee	thaaptii
taRaptaa	taRaptee	taRaptii
kaattaa	kaattee	kaattii
sũũttaa	sũũttee	sũũttii
paathtaa	paathtee	paathtii
phaTtaa	phaTtee	phaTtii
paTtaa	paTtee	paTtii
ugaTtaa	ugaTtee	ugaTtii
baiThtaa	baiThtee	baiThtii
uThtaa	uThtee	uThtii
pahũctaa	pahũctee	pahũctii
beectaa	beectee	beectii
bactaa	bactee	bactii
pactaa	pactee	pactii
bichtaa	bichtee	bichtii
puuchtaa	puuchtee	puuchtii
lagtaa	lagtee	lagtii
jaagtaa	jaagtee	jaagtii
sũũghtaa	sũũghtee	sũũghtii

saktaa------	saktee------	saktii
ruktaa	ruktee	ruktii
rooktaa	rooktee	rooktii
deekhtaa	deekhtee	deekhtii
likhtaa	likhtee	likhtii
rakhtaa	rakhtee	rakhtii
duubtaa	duubtee	duubtii
phabtaa	phabtee	phabtii
cubhtaa	cubhtee	cubhtii
ladtaa	ladtee	ladtii
laadtaa	laadte	laadtii
baandhtaa	baandhtee	baandhtii
sadhtaa	sadhtee	sadhtii
DhũũDhtaa	DhũũDhtee	DhũũDhtii
bajtaa	bajtee	bajtii
gũũjtaa	gũũjtee	gũũjtii
sujhtaa	sujhtee	sujhtii
samajhtaa	samajhtee	samajhtii

2. t, th, T, Th reviewed

A. Imitation drill: t

too
tiin
taaj
taazaa
teerah
taiyaar
taraf
tarah
baat
saat
raat
aurat
bahut
marammat
aataa
juutaa
siitaa
papiitaa
kitaab
ḳhatam
bistar
sastaa
guptaa
kahtaa
kurtaa
miltaa
satrah
santraa

B. Imitation drill: th

thaa
thee
thii
thooRii
thooRee
thooRaa
mathuraa
widyaarthii

C. Buildup drill: t, th

satrah/santree thee.
santraa/taazaa thaa.
santree/thooRee/sastee thee.
yee/widyaarthii-kii/kitaab hai.
yee/widyaarthii-kii/kitaab thii.
mathuraa/kis-taraf hai.
mathuraa/kis-taraf thaa.
kyaa/nainiitaal/mathuraa-kee paas hai?
baaẽẽ haath-par/bahut/moocii/rahtee hãĩ.
kyaa/tum/mathuraa-mẽẽ/thooRii deer/raktee hoo.

D. Imitation drill: T

Tiicar
TuuTaa
chooTaa
rooTii
hooTal
leeT
reeT
kooT
painT
minaT
TikaT
ghanTee
ghanTaa
pleeTfaarm
sTeešan

E. Imitation drill: Th

Thair
Thiik
Thand
ThanDaa
baiThaa
baiThii
miiThaa
miiThii
miThaaii
aThaarah
uThaanaa
uThaa

F. Buildup drill: T, Th

kyaa/Tiicar/leeT hõõgee?
is/hooTal-kaa/reeT kyaa hai.
yee/miThaaii/ThanDii hai.
eek ghanTee-mẽẽ/kitnii/minaT/hootii hãĩ.
is/sTeešan-kaa/pleeTfaarm/chooTaa hai.
meeree paas/aaTh/kooT hãĩ?
yee/chooTii/miThaaii kaisii hai.
woo/kooT/uThaaoo.
aaTh/chooTii/miThaaiyãã doo.
meeree/Tiicar/Thiik hãĩ.

G. Buildup drill: t, T

tum/TuuTee/paisee doo.
yee/bahut/chooTaa/papiitaa hai.
saat bajee too/bahut/leeT hai.
rooTii/kab/taiyaar hoogii.
aadhee/ghanTee-mẽẽ/tiis/minaT hootii hãĩ.
tum kooT/aur/kurtaa lee aaoo.
nainiitaal-kaa/sTeešan kahãã hai.
guptaa jii/Tiicar hãĩ.
rooTii/kahãã/miltii hai.
saat nambar-kee/pleeTfaarm-par/khaRii hai.
ghanTee-kaa/tumhaaraa/kyaa/reeT hoogaa.
bistar/farsT klaas-mẽẽ lee caloo.
TikaT/sTeešan-par/miltee hãĩ.
eek ghanTee-kee/tiin rupaee.
yahãã-kaa/reeT/too/utnaa hii hai.

H. Buildup drill: th, Th

kyaa/miiThaa/thooRaa hai.
mathuraa-mẽẽ/Thaireegẽẽ.
paanii/thooRaa/ThanDaa hai.
kyaa/mathuraa-mẽẽ/miThaaii-kii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ?
bahut/Thiik/thaa.
kyaa woo/miThaaii/thii?
uThaarah/miThaaii/thĩĩ.
yee/miThaaii/zyaadaa/miiThii/thii.

3. j-jh contrasted

A. Buildup drill

yee/jhoolaa/diijiyee.
jaataa hũũ./mujhee/jaldii hai.
jhoolaa/kis/jagah hai.
woo/singh jii-kaa/jhoolaa hai.
yee saaRii/gujraatii hai,/samjhee?

B. Additive drill

Add mujhee.

Instructor: jaldii hai.
Class: mujhee jaldii hai.

jaanaa hai.
yee jhoolaa diijiyee.
jaipur jaanaa hai.
woo juutee pasand hãĩ.
acchii jagah caahiyee.

4. r, R reviewed

A. Buildup drill: r

duun/ekspres/sahaaranpur/ruktii hai.
caar/nambar-kee/pleeTfaarm-par hai.
bistar/uupar/rakh/doo.
meeraa/intizaar/karnaa.
yaatrii-kii/marzii kyaa hai.
agar/aap-koo/zaruurat hoo.
sãbhaal-kar/uupar/rakh doo.
bistar/andar lee calũũ?
meeree/paas/bistar hai.
kyaa/kuch aur/mooTar-kee/andar hai?

B. Buildup drill: R

kis/gaaRii-see/jaanaa hai.
yee/khiRkii/band hai.
yee/gaaRii/baRii hai.
gaaRii/kahãã/khaRii hai.
yee/khiRkiyãã/bahut/baRii hãĩ.

C. Buildup drill: r, R

baRii/meharbaanii.
kyaa/mooTar/saRak-par hai?
meerii/gaaRii/pleeTfaarm-par/khaRii hai.
kyaa/yee gaaRii/sahaaranpur/ruktii hai?
is/saRak-par/bahut/rikšee hãĩ.
aagree-kii/saRkõõ-par/ghuumũũgaa.

5. Flexibility with longer sentences

A. Buildup drill

mooTar-kee/piichee-see/kulii/wideešii-kaa/saamaan/nikaaltaa hai.
wideešii-kaa/kaalaa/bakas/us-kee saath/nahĩĩ/jaaeegaa.
kulii/wideešii-koo/eek/halkaa-waalaa/jhoolaa/deetaa hai.
wideešii-kii/gaaRii/saat nambar-kee/pleeTfaarm-par/khaRii hai.
is/baRii/gaaRii-mẽẽ/sirf/eek aur/acchii/jagah hai.
kulii/bistar bhii/bakas-kee paas/uupar/rakh deetaa hai.
khiRkii/band hai,/agar/wideešii-koo/zaruurat hoo,/too/woo/khool lẽẽgee.

B. Expansion drill

Repeat Drill A as an expansion drill, e.g.,

nikaaltaa hai.
saamaan
wideešii-kaa
kulii
piichee-see
mooTar-kee

Grammar Drills

1. Pattern expansion

1.1 Pattern 1

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
My bag is inside.	And mine is outside.
meeraa jhoolaa andar hai.	aur meeraa too baahar hai.
meeraa jhoolaa piichee hai.	aagee
meeraa jhoolaa niicee hai.	uupar
meeraa jhoolaa halkaa hai.	bhaarii
meeraa jhoolaa chooTaa hai.	baRaa
meeraa jhoolaa baaẽẽ haath-par hai.	daahinee haath-par
meeraa jhoolaa daahinee haath-par hai.	baaẽẽ haath-par
meeraa jhoolaa baRaa hai.	chooTaa
meeraa jhoolaa bhaarii hai.	halkaa
meeraa jhoolaa uupar hai.	niicee
meeraa jhoolaa aagee hai.	piichee
meeraa jhoolaa baahar hai.	andar

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Is your bag lightweight?	No, it's heavy.
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa halkaa hai?	nahĩĩ, bhaarii hai.
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa chooTaa hai?	baRaa
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa uupar hai?	niicee
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa niicee hai?	uupar
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa baRaa hai?	chooTaa
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa baahar hai?	andar
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa piichee hai?	aagee
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa andar hai?	baahar
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa aagee hai?	piichee
kyaa aap-kaa jhoolaa bhaarii hai?	halkaa

1.2 Pattern 2

A. Substitution-agreement drill

This is the gentleman's bag.

yee saahab-kaa (jhoolaa) hai.

gaaRii
saamaan
jagah
bakas
ciiz
marzii
kulii
nambar
mooTar
bistar

B. Substitution-agreement drill: plural

Whose bedrolls are these?

yee (bistar) kis-kee hãĩ.

gaaRiyãã
kulii
ciizẽẽ
mooTrẽẽ
bakas
jaghẽẽ
jhoolee
nambar

C. Substitution-agreement drill: singular, plural

This black box doesn't go.

yee kaalaa (bakas) nahĩĩ jaaeegaa.
mooTar
jhoolee
ciizẽẽ
jhoolaa
mooTrẽẽ
saamaan
gaaRii
ciiz

D. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
This station is in Delhi.	This is the Delhi station.
yee sTeešan dillii-mẽẽ hai.	yee dillii-kaa sTeešan hai.
yee pleeTfaarm sTeešan-par hai.	yee sTeešan-kaa pleeTfaarm hai.
yee gaRii dillii jaatii hai.	yee dillii-kii gaaRii hai.
yee nambar pleeTfaarm-par hai.	yee pleeTfaarm-kaa nambar hai.
yee mooTar aagree jaatii hai.	yee aagree-kii mooTar hai.
yee kulii sTeešan-par kaam kartaa hai.	yee sTeešan-kaa kulii hai.

E. Substitution-agreement drill

Won't the train be late?

(gaaRii) leeT too nahĩĩ hoogii.
mooTar
gaaRiyãã
kulii
saahab
(Continue with the names of 6 students.)

1.3 Pattern 3

A. Substitution-agreement drill

There are only these four things.

bas yahii (caar ciizẽẽ) hãĩ.
chah bakas
tiin jhoolee
eek mooTar
soolah jaghẽẽ
doo rikšee
eek kulii

B. Individual conversational response drill

The instructor is a kulii, the student a saahab.

Instructor: How many things are there?
1st Student: There are only these four things.

Instructor: kitnii ciizẽẽ hãĩ.
2nd Student: bas yahii caar ciizẽẽ hãĩ.

Instructor: kitnee bakas hãĩ.
3rd Student: bas yahii eek bakas hai.

Instructor: Continue with any appropriate noun used so far in pattern expansion.

C. Chain drill

Beginning with the number 7, each student repeats the basic sentence with the next odd number.

Instructor: It's standing on platform #7.
1st Student: It's standing on platform #9.

Instructor: saat nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par khaRii hai.
1st Student: nau nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par khaRii hai.
2nd Student: gyaarah nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par khaRii hai.
etc.

1.4 Pattern 4

A. Substitution drill

Which train are you going on, sir?

kis (gaaRii)-see jaanaa hai saahab.
mooTar
rikšee
ekspres
Treen

B. Chain drill

kulii:	kis gaaRii-see jaanaa hai saahab.	Which train are you going on, sir?
saahab:	duun ekspress-see.	On the Doon Express.
kulii:	kahãã jaanaa hai.	Where are you going?
saahab:	sahaaranpur-tak.	As far as Saharanpur.

kulii: kis gaaRii-see jaanaa hai saahab.
saahab: dillii-kii gaaRii.
kulii: kahãã rukẽẽgee.
saahab: dehraa duun.

1.5 Pattern 5

A. Substitution drill

Which class should I take them to?

kis (klaas)-mẽẽ lee calũũ.
mooTar
gaaRii
ekspres
rikšee

B. Substitution drill

Which station should I take them to?

kis (sTeešan)-par lee calũũ.
pleeTfaarm
mooTar
gaaRii
ekspres
rikšee

C. Chain drill

Use any of the substitutions in Drills A and B.

kulii:	saamaan kahãã lee calũũ.	Where should I take your luggage?
yaatrii:	us gaaRii-mẽẽ lee caloo.	Take it into that train.

kulii:	bistar kahãã lee calũũ.
yaatrii:	nau nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par lee caloo.

D. Substitution drill

My luggage is at the station.

meeraa saamaan (sTeešan)-par hai.
pleeTfaarm
gaaRii
duun ekspres
saRak
wahãã

E. Substitution drill

My luggage is on the train.

meeraa saamaan (gaaRii)-mẽẽ hai.
ekspres
rikšee
mooTar

F. Chain drill

Use any of the substitutions in Drills D and E as well as those in Drills A and B.

kulii:	aap-kaa saamaan kahãã hai.	Where is your luggage?
yaatrii:	is saRak-par hai.	It's on this street.
kulii:	kahãã lee calũũ.	Where should I take it?
yaatrii:	sTeešan-par lee caloo.	Take it to the station.

kulii:	aap-kaa saamaan kahãã hai.
yaatrii:	us pleeTfaarm-par.
kulii:	kahãã lee calũũ.
yaatrii:	dillii-kii gaaRii-mẽẽ lee caloo.

2. The verbal -ee forms

Verbal -ee forms have endings varying with person and number of the subject which are identical in form with the -gaa verb forms introduced in the previous unit but which do not show the -gaa suffix. They show several main meanings depending on the context. In the examples below the most common English equivalents are 'should' or 'let us.'

kidhar lee calẽẽ.	Where should I take you?
kis klaas-mẽẽ lee calũũ.	Which class should I take them to?
kal ḳilee calẽẽ.	Let's go to the fort tomorrow.
wideešii saayad ḳilee calee.	Maybe the foreigner will go to the fort.

The parallel between -gaa and -ee forms also holds true for the auxiliary verb hai, with the exception of the first person. These two corresponding sets of forms, cited in the masculine, are:

mãĩ hooũũgaa--- hũũ
yee, woo hoogaa --- hoo
tum hoogee --- hoo
ham, aap, yee, woo hõõgee --- hõõ

farsT klaas šaayad aagee hoo.	First class might be up in front.
agar aap-koo zaruurat hoo.	If you should feel the need.
šaayad gaaRiyãã aagee hõõ.	Maybe the trains are up ahead.

The -gaa forms could also be used to indicate a greater degree of definiteness, suggested by the distinction between English 'let's go' and 'we'll go now.'

kal ķilee calẽẽgee.	We'll go to the fort tomorrow.

-ee forms may also occur with adverbs or conjunctions like šaayad and agar. Other verb forms, however, may also occur with these. The difference in meaning is primarily one of degree of certainty. For example, given the situation of a man sitting inside a train, one might say any of the following:

šaayad andar baiThee.	Maybe he's sitting inside.	(but I really don't know)
šaayad andar baiTheegaa.	Maybe he's sitting inside.	(at least I suppose he is)
šaayad andar baiThtaa hai.	Probably he's sitting inside.	(as a matter of fact, I'm fairly sure he is)

Another type of meaning is illustrated by some types of statements, which in English usually appear in the ordinary present:

jaisaa aap kahẽẽ.	Whatever (As) you say.

A. Transformation: -gaa forms to -ee forms

Instructor	Class
I will take the things in.	Should I take your things in?
saamaan andar lee calũũgaa.	saamaan andar lee calũũ?
saamaan andar lee calũũgii.	lee calũũ?
saamaan andar lee caleegaa.	lee calee?
saamaan andar lee caleegii.	lee calee?
saamaan andar lee calẽẽgee.	lee calẽẽ?
saamaan andar lee calẽẽgii.	lee calẽẽ?
saamaan andar lee caloogee.	lee caloo?
saamaan andar lee caloogii.	lee caloo?

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Who will take it?	Why don't you take it?
is-koo kaun loog lee calẽẽgee.	aap loog lee calẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog bataaẽẽgee.	bataaẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog deekhẽẽgee.	deekhẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog karẽẽgee.	karẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog rakhẽẽgee.	rakhẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog rookẽẽgee.	rookẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog nikaalẽẽgee.	nikaalẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog uThaaẽẽgee.	uThaaẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog likh lẽẽgee.	likh lẽẽ.
is-koo kaun loog kar dẽẽgee.	kar dẽẽ.

C. Substitution-agreement drill

Where should we take the foreigner?

(ham) wideešii-koo kidhar lee calẽẽ.
mãĩ
laRkaa
rikšee-waalaa
woo

D. Substitution-agreement drill

Which class should I take them to?

(mãĩ) kis klaas-mẽẽ lee calũũ.
woo
laRkii
ham

E. Subsitution-agreement drill

Should I write down the numbers?

kyaa (mãĩ) nambar likh lũũ?
ham
dhoobii
meem saahab
bairaa

F. Substitution-agreement drill

Shall I put the luggage there?

(mãĩ) saamaan wahãã rakh dũũ?
rikšee-waalaa
tum
ham
saahab
eek aur aadmii
aap

G. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Where would first class be?	Maybe first class is up ahead.
farsT klaas kahãã hoogaa.	farsT klaas šaayad aagee hoo.
gaaRii kahãã hoogii.	gaRii hoo.
ciizẽẽ kahãã hõõgii.	ciizẽẽ hõõ.
kulii kahãã hõõgee.	kulii hõõ.
saamaan kahãã hoogaa.	saamaan hoo.
dukaanẽẽ kahãã hõõgii.	dukaanẽẽ hõõ.
moocii kahãã hõõgee.	moocii hõõ.
das nambar kahãã hoogaa.	das nambar hoo.
acchii jagah kahãã hoogii.	acchii jagah hoo.

H. Chain drill

Repeat Drill G as a chain drill. Omit the noun in the answer.

Instructor: farsT klaas
wideešii: farsT klaas kahãã hoogaa.
kulii: šaayad aagee hoo.

I. Individual conversational response drill

The scene is the railway station in Delhi. Answer with šaayad and the verb form used in the question.

Instructor:	woo kulii kyaa kar rahaa hai.	What's that porter doing?
1st Student:	šaayad saamaan nikaal rahaa hai.	Maybe he's taking out the luggage.
Instructor:	meerii gaaRii kahãã hoogii.	
2nd Student:	šaayad das nambar-kee pleeTfaarm-par hoogii.	

Instructor: woo aadmii kyaa k̯hariid rahaa hai.
woo doo laRkee kahãã jaaẽẽgee.
sTeešan-par kaisaa khaanaa mil saktaa hai.
aap-kaa kulii kyaa rakh rahaa hai.
woo yaatrii kahãã-kee hãĩ.
das bajee duun ekspres kahãã thii.
kaun-sii gaaRii leeT hoogii.
aap kis klaas-mẽẽ hãĩ.
mãĩ kulii-koo kitnaa paisaa dũũ.
kulii-kii mazduurii kitnii hai.
yaatriyõõ-kii kaun aadmii madad kartaa hai.
hamaarii gaaRii kis pleeTfaarm-par khaRii hai.
mãĩ kahãã-see TikaT k̯hariid saktaa hũũ.
aap-kee doost kahãã jaaẽẽgee.
aap kis šahar-mẽẽ rukẽẽgee.

J. Individual conversational response drill

Two foreigners standing in a railroad station are talking.

Instructor: Where is this train going to go?
1st Student: I don't know. Maybe it's going to Delhi.

Instructor: yee gaaRii kidhar jaaeegii.
1st Student: maaluum nahĩĩ. šaayad dillii jaaee.

Instructor: TikaT kahãã-see k̯hariid saktaa hũũ.
2nd Student: maaluum nahĩĩ. šaayad is kiRkii-see.

Instructor: meeree jhoolee kahãã hãĩ.
woo kulii kis-koo bulaaeegaa.
woo loog kahãã see hãĩ.
yee laRkii kyaa bool rahii hai.
paanii kahãã mil sakeegaa.
mãĩ kulii-koo kitnee paisee dũũ.
yee gaaRii kitnee ghanTee-mẽẽ sahaaranpur pahũceegii.
woo kulii kyaa kar rahee hãĩ.
aap kitnee bajee dehraa duun pahũcẽẽgee.

K. Individual conversational response drill

Repeat Drill J omitting maaluum nahĩĩ and substituting the -gaa verb form for the -ee verb form.

Instructor:	yee gaRii kidhar jaaeegii.	Where is this train going?
1st Student:	šaayad dillii jaaeegii.	Maybe it's going to Delhi.

L. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Shall I take the baggage.	Yes, you're the one to take the baggage.
kyaa mãĩ saamaan lee calũũ?	hãã, aap hii lee calẽẽgee.
kyaa kulii saamaan rakh dee?	woo hii rakh deegaa.
kyaa ham loog TikaT k̯hariidẽẽ?	ham hii k̯hariidẽẽgee.
kyaa bairaa kapRee dhulaaee?	woo hii dhulaaeegaa.
kyaa moocii juutee Thiik kar dee?	woo hii Thiik kar deegaa.
kyaa mãĩ sawaal puuchũũ?	aap hii puuchẽẽgee.
kyaa dhoobii kapRee likh dee?	woo hii likh deegaa.
kyaa meem saahab saaRii k̯hariidẽẽ?	woo hii k̯hariidẽẽgii,

M. Substitution drill

If you want, I'll open the window.

agar zaruurat hoo, too (khiRkii khool dũũ).
khiRkii band kar dũũ.
TikaT ḳhariid dũũ.
bistar nikaalũũ.
rikšaa rookũũ.
saamaan rakh dũũ.
kulii bulaaũũ.
bakas uThaaũũ.

N. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Let's see the Taj Mahal.	If you say so, then we'll see it.
taaj mahal deekhẽẽgee.	agar aap kahẽẽ too deekẽẽgee.
gaaRii-see dillii jaaẽẽgee.	jaaẽẽgee.
swis hooTal-mẽẽ Thairẽẽgee.	Thairẽẽgee.
sTeešan-par ghuumẽẽgee.	ghuumẽẽgee.
us-kii madad karẽẽgee.	karẽẽgee.
meeree ghar calẽẽgee.	calẽẽgee.
meerii kitaab meez-par rakh dẽẽgee.	rakh dẽẽgee.

3. Adverbs of location and direction

Adverbs of location and direction are actually oblique nouns. Those introduced so far that are masculine oblique nouns are aagee, piichee, siidhee, yahãã, wahãã, idhar, udhar, andar, saath, baahar, uupar, niicee and paas. One feminine oblique noun has also been introduced: taraf. (Note that one knows that it is oblique because is, not yee, precedes it.)

udhar hai. siidhee jaaiyee.
yahãã baiThiyee.
šaayad aagee hoo.
uupar rakh doo.

Some of the adverbs may be followed by a postposition.

wahãã-par	at that place
piichee-see	from behind
uupar-see	from above

Those adverbs that have adjective equivalents are:

siidhee:	siidhaa	straight
niicee:	niicaa	low
piichee:	pichlaa	last, behind
aagee:	aglaa	next

Others form adjectives by the addition of -kaa.

yahãã:	yahãã-kaa	of here

A. Conversational response drill

yaatrii	kulii
Is my luggage up above (on top)?	No, it's down below (underneath).
kyaa meeraa saamaan uupar hai?	jii nahĩĩ, niicee hai.
kyaa meeraa saamaan yahãã hai?	wahãã
kyaa meeraa saamaan aagee hai?	piichee
kyaa meeraa saamaan udhar hai?	idhar
kyaa meeraa saamaan daahinii taraf hai?	baaĩĩ taraf
kyaa meeraa saamaan niicee hai?	uupar
kyaa meeraa saamaan andar hai?	baahar
kyaa meeraa saamaan uupar hai?	niicee
kyaa meeraa saamaan idhar hai?	udhar
kyaa meeraa saamaan piichee hai?	aagee
kyaa meeraa saamaan wahãã hai?	yahãã
kyaa meeraa saamaan baaĩĩ taraf hai?	daahinii taraf
kyaa meeraa saamaan baahar hai?	andar

B. Chain drill

Any of the adverbs in Drill A may be used in the answer.

yaatrii:	meeraa saamaan kahãã hai.	Where is my baggage?
kulii:	piichee hai.	It's in back.
yaatrii:	aagee rakh doo.	Put it in front.

yaatrii: meeree jhoolee kahãã hãĩ.
kulii: baahar hãĩ.
yaatrii: andar rakh doo.

C. Substitution drill

Take the luggage out of the back.

saamaan (piichee)-see nikaaloo.
aagee
andar
daahinee haath
baaẽẽ haath

D. Substitution drill

Take the bag from above.

jhoolaa (uupar)-see loo.
aagee
niicee
baaẽẽ haath
andar
piichee

4. Postpositional constructions

Postpositional constructions function like single-word postpositions. Grammatically, these constructions are made up of oblique case nouns (adverbs) preceded by the adjectival form of a noun or pronoun also in the oblique case:

kal raat-kee pahlee.
caar bajee-kee baad mileegaa.
meeree piichee aaiyee.
us-kee uupar hai.

meeree paas das rupaee hãĩ.
aap-kee liyee sirf biis rupaee.
taaj mahal-kii taraf

The words of direction and location discussed in the previous section frequently occur in postpositional constructions.

gaaRii-kee baahar	outside the train
gaaRii-kee andar	inside the train
gaaRii-kee paas	near the train
gaaRii-kee saath	along with the train
gaaRii-kee daahinee haath-par	on the right of the train

Postpositional constructions may in turn be followed by a postposition.

gaaRii-kee piichee-see saamaan nikaaloo.

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
It's on top.	It's on top of what?
uupar hai.	kis-kee uupar hai.
niicee hai.	niicee
aagee hai.	aagee
piichee hai.	piichee
andar hai.	andar
baahar hai.	baahar
saath hai.	saath
paas hai.	paas

B. Individual conversational response drill

All questions are based on the conversation in this section.

Instructor: What is the foreigner's baggage inside of?
1st Student: It's inside the car.

Instructor: wideešii-kaa saamaan kis-kee andar hai.
1st Student: mooTar-kee andar hai.

Instructor: kyaa saamaan mooTar-kee aagee hai.
2nd Student: jii nahĩĩ, mooTar-kee piichee hai.

Instructor: kulii kis-kee piichee-see saamaan nikaaltaa hai.
halkaa-waalaa jhoolaa kis-kee saath rakheegaa.
wideešii kis-kee piichee jaataa hai.
kulii kis-kee aagee jaataa hai.
kyaa saahab-kaa TikaT kulii-kee paas hai?
farsT klaas kis-kee aagee hai.
kyaa kulii bistar jhoolee-kee paas rakh deetaa hai?
bistar aur bakas kis-kee uupar hãĩ.
gaaRii-mẽẽ wideešii kis aadmii-kee paas baiThtaa hai.

C. Conversational response drill

Answer in the negative, giving the correct adverb plus a form of thaa.

Instructor: Was the traveler outside the train?
Class: No, he was inside.

Instructor: kyaa yaatrii gaaRii-kee baahar thaa?
Class: jii nahĩĩ, andar thaa.

kyaa saahab-kaa saamaan mooTar-kee aagee thaa?
jii nahĩĩ, piichee thaa.

kyaa bistar aur bakas us jagah-kee niicee thee?
jii nahĩĩ, uupar thee.

kyaa bistar bakas-kee andar thaa?
jii nahĩĩ, paas thaa.

kyaa halkaa-waalaa jhoolaa saahab-kee piichee thaa?
jii nahĩĩ, saath thaa.

kyaa saahab-kaa saamaan mooTar-kee aagee thaa?
jii nahĩĩ, piichee thaa.

kyaa kulii saahab-kee piichee jaataa thaa?
jii nahĩĩ, aagee jaataa thaa.

kyaa mooTar sTeešan-kee andar thii?
jii nahĩĩ, baahar thii.

pichlii baar kyaa farsT klaas gaaRii-mẽẽ piichee thaa?
jii nahĩĩ, aagee thaa.

D. Substitution drill

For you only 23 rupees.

(aap-kee) liyee sirf teeiis rupaee.
tumhaaree
meeree
hamaaree
wideešii-kee
un-kee
kulii-kee
us-kee

E. Chain drill

Instructor:	naii kitaab	new book
2nd Student:	yee naii kitaab kis-kee liyee hai.	Who is this new book for?
3rd Student:	aap hii-kee liyee.	It's for you.
Instructor:	dhulaaii	
1st Student:	dhulaaii kis-kee liyee hai.	
2nd Student:	dhoobii-kee liyee.	

Instructor: mazduurii
yee caudah naee paisee
woo niilii saaRii
yee halkaa jhoolaa
yee phaTee juutee
yee gaaRii-kaa TikaT
woo rikšaa
yee saaf kapRee
yee taazee santree
yee ThanDaa paanii

5. The infinitive with postpositions

Infinitives function as nouns and may be followed by postpositions:

saamaan uThaanee-kee liyee kulii

Similarly, one might say:

saamaan uThaanee-kee baad	after carrying the clothes
saamaan uThaanee-kee pahlee	before carrying the luggage
saamaan uThaanee-mẽẽ	in carrying luggage

Note that in English the '-ing' form of the verb is used in equivalent constructions.

A. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
The porter carries the luggage.	His job is to carry luggage.
woo kulii saamaan uThaataa hai.	woo saamaan uThaanee-kee liyee hai.
woo aadmii nambar likhtaa hai.	woo nambar likhnee-kee liyee hai.
woo dhoobii kapRee dhootaa hai.	woo kapRee dhoonee-kee liyee hai.
woo rikšee-waalaa šahar dikhaataa hai.	woo šahar dikhaanee-kee liyee hai.
woo aadmii ciizẽẽ gintaa hai.	woo ciizẽẽ ginnee-kee liyee hai.
woo phal-waalaa phal beectaa hai.	woo phal beecnee-kee liyee hai.
woo bairaa kamree saaf kartaa hai.	woo kamree saaf karnee-kee liyee hai.
woo moocii juutee Thiik kartaa hai.	woo juutee Thiik karnee-kee liyee hai.

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
I'm going to buy a ticket.	What will you do after buying the ticket?
mãĩ TikaT ḳhariidũũgaa.	ḳhariidnee-kee baad kyaa karẽẽgee.
mãĩ kulii bulaaũũgaa.	bulaanee-kee baad
mãĩ gaaRii-mẽẽ baiThũũgaa.	baiThnee-kee baad
mãĩ aagree jaaũũgaa.	jaanee-kee baad
mãĩ šahar-mẽẽ ghuumũũgaa.	ghuumnee-kee baad
mãĩ taaj mahal deekhũũgaa.	deekhnee-kee baad
mãĩ kapRee dhulaaũũgaa.	dhulaanee-kee baad

C. Conversational response drill

Repeat Drill B, substituting -kee pahlee for -kee baad.

Instructor	Class
I'm going to buy a ticket.	What will you do before buying the ticket?
mãĩ TikaT ḳhariidũũgaa.	ḳhariidnee-kee pahlee kyaa karẽẽgee.

6. The -kar construction

The suffix -kar, as well as its informal alternant -kee, occurs after the verb root. The resulting construction may serve either as an adverb, as in

sãbhal-kar (or) bac-kee

or it may appear before another verb to indicate an action which takes place either immediately before or simultaneously with that of the main verb:

paanii pii-kar aataa hũũ.

-kee and -kar are used interchangeably in the above constructions. With the verb karnaa only -kee is used.

kaam kar-kee idhar aaoo.	Do your work and come here.

A. Substitution drill

Get a drink and come right back

abhii (paanii pii)-kar aaoo.
keelaa khaa
ḳilaa deekh
rooTii ḳhariid
saamaan uThaa
khiRkii khool

B. Substitution drill

Come here and close the windows.

tum (yahãã aa)-kar khiRkii band karoo.
wahãã jaa
khaRee hoo.
kitaab paRh
khaanaa khaa
saamaan rakh

C. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
Be careful. Put the bedding up there.	Be careful when you put the bedding up there.
sãbhaaloo. bistar uupar rakh doo.	sãbhaal-kar bistar uupar rakh doo.
bacnaa bhaaii. zaraa sãbhalnaa.	bac-kar bhaaii, zaraa sãbhalnaa.
andar caliyee. baiThiyee.	andar cal-kar baiThiyee.
ḳilaa deekhiyee. waapas aaiyee.	ḳilaa deekh-kar waapas aaiyee.
sTeešan pahũcnaa. TikaT ḳhariidnaa.	sTeešan pahũc-kar TikaT ḳhariidnaa.
TikaT ḳhariidiyee. meeree piichee aaiyee.	TikaT ḳhariid-kar meeree piichee aaiyee.
saamaan uThaaoo. gaaRii-mẽẽ lee caloo.	saamaan uThaa-kar gaaRii-mẽẽ lee caloo.
hooTal pahũciyee. bairee-koo bulaaiyee.	hooTal pahũc-kar bairee-koo bulaaiyee.
sãbhalnaa. saamaan uThaanaa.	sãbhal-kar saamaan uThaanaa.

D. Transformation drill

Repeat Drill C using -kee instead of -kar.

Instructor	Class
sãbhaaloo. bistar uupar rakh doo.	sãbhaal-kee bistar uupar rakh doo.

E. Substitution drill

Fix it and come here.

(Thiik) kar-kee aaoo.
saaf
kaam
band
baat
madad
ḳhatam

F. Individual transformation drill

Use either -kar or -kee.

Instructor: You should buy a ticket. You should call a porter.
1st Student: You should buy a ticket and call a porter.

Instructor: aap TikaT k̤hariidẽẽ. kulii bulaaẽẽ.
1st Student: aap Tikat k̤hariid-kar kulii bulaaẽẽ.

Instructor: aap kulii bulaaẽẽ. gaaRii-mẽẽ saamaan lee calẽẽ.
2nd Student: aap kulii bulaa-kee gaaRii-mẽẽ saamaan lee calẽẽ.

Instructor: aap gaaRii-mẽẽ baiThẽẽ. kiRkii band karẽẽ.
aap kiRkii band karẽẽ. baat karẽẽ.
uša jii aagree jaaẽẽgii. šahar-mẽẽ ghuumẽẽgii.
woo šahar-mẽẽ ghuumẽẽgii. k̤ilaa deekhẽẽgii.
woo k̤ilaa deekhẽẽgii. pušpaa jii-kee paas jaaẽẽgii.
woo pušpaa-jii-kee paas jaaẽẽgii. baat karẽẽgii.
woo baat karẽẽgii. waapas jaaẽẽgii.
rikšee-waalaa paanii piitaa hai. waapas jaataa hai.
saahab papiitee deekhtee hãĩ. un-koo k̤hariidtee hãĩ.
kulii saamaan mooTar-see uThaataa hai. gaaRii-mẽẽ lee jaataa hai.
moocii juutaa Thiik kartaa hai. us-par paališ kartaa hai.

7. -waalaa with adjectives

Aside from its use with nouns, -waalaa may also be used with adjectives in order to single out a particular object. The example yee halkaa-waalaa jhoolaa carries the connotation 'the bag that is light' (in contrast to others which are perhaps not so light). -waalaa is particularly frequent with persons.

yee baRaa-waalaa aadmii	The large man

It is also used with adverbial constructions such as daahnee haath:

daahnee haath-waalaa makaan	The building to the right

A. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
This bag is light.	This is the lightweight bag.
yee jhoolaa halkaa hai.	yee halkaa-waalaa jhoolaa hai.
yee makaan baaẽẽ haath-par hai.	yee baaẽẽ haath-waalaa makaan hai.
yee bakas bhaarii hãĩ.	yee bhaarii-waalee bakas hãĩ.
woo dukaan naii hai.	woo naii-waalii dukaan hai.
woo kitaabẽẽ chooTii hãĩ.	woo chooTii-waalii kitaabẽẽ hãĩ.
yee laRkee bhuukee hãĩ.	yee bhuukee-waalee laRkee hãĩ.
yee keelee kaccee hãĩ.	yee kaccee-waalee keelee hãĩ.
woo laRkiyãã sundar hãĩ.	woo sundar-waalii laRkiyãã hãĩ.
woo saahab madraasii hãĩ.	woo madraasii-waalee saahab hãĩ.
woo paijaamaa safeed hai.	woo safeed-waalaa paijaamaa hai.

B. Chain drill

gentleman: Where is my other pair of pajamas?
washerman: Which pair of pajamas?
gentleman: My red pajamas aren't among these.

saahab: meeraa eek aur paijaamaa thaa.
dhoobii: kaun saa paijaamaa.
saahab: meeraa laal-waalaa paijaamaa in-mẽẽ nahĩĩ hai.

saahab: meeraa doo aur saaRiyãã thĩĩ.
dhoobii: kaun sii saaRiyãã.
saahab: meerii piilii-waalii saaRiyãã in-mẽẽ nahĩĩ hãĩ.

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Which bag should I give you, the light on or the heavy one?
1st Student: Give me the light one.

Instructor: kaun saa jhoolaa dee dũũ, halkaa yaa bhaarii.
1st Student: halkaa-waalaa diijiyee.

Instructor: kaun sii ḳitaab paRhũũ, chooTii yaa baRii.
2nd Student: chooTii-waalii paRhiyee.

Instructor: kaun saa painT dhulaaũũ, safeed yaa kaalaa.
kaun sii saaRii dhooũũ, piilii yaa laal.
kaun saa bistar lee calũũ, bhaarii yaa halkaa.
kaun see bakas rakh dũũ, chooTee yaa baRee.
kaun saa saamaan lee calũũ, nayaa yaa puraanaa.
kaun sii ḳamiizẽẽ ḳhariidũũ, piilii yaa safeed.

Rapid Response

Group 1

wideešii kis šahar-kee sTeešan-par hãĩ.
wideešii kisee bulaatee hãĩ.
kyaa bistar wideešii-kee saath nahĩĩ jaaeegaa?
kulii kahãã-see saamaan nikaaltaa hai.
kyaa wideešii dillii jaa rahee hãĩ?
wideešii kis ciiz-koo apnee saath rakhẽẽgee.
gaaRii kitnee ghanTee leeT hai.
kyaa duun ekspres sahaaranpur ruktii hai?
kyaa wideešii-kaa jhoolaa bhaarii hai?
kulii saamaan kahãã rakhtaa hai.
farsT klaas gaaRii-mẽẽ kahãã hai.
wideešii kulii-koo kitnaa paisaa deetee hãĩ.

Group 2

kyaa kulii wideešii hai?
wideešii-kee paas kitnii ciizẽẽ hãĩ.
wideešii kis gaaRii-see jaaẽẽgee.
kyaa kaalaa bakas wideešii-kee saath jaaeegaa?
wideešii kis-kee piichee jaatee hai.
kyaa wideešii-kee paas TikaT hai?
gaaRii kis pleeTfaarm-par aaeegii.
kyaa gaRii eek ghanTee leeT hai?
kyaa farsT-klaas-mẽẽ jagah hai?
kulii-kii mazduurii kitnii huii.
bistar kis ciiz-kee paas rakhaa hai.

Review Conversations

sTeešan-par

1. A: kahãã calnaa hai, saahab.
   B: mathuraa jaaũũgaa. mathuraa-kii gaaRii kis pleeTfaarm par hai.
   A: aaTh nambar-kee pleeTfaarm par.
   B: acchaa, meeree piichee aaoo, yee saamaan lee loo.

2. A: kyaa kuch aur saamaan hai, saahab.
   B: hãã, eek aur jhoolaa thaa, woo udhar hai, gaaRii-kee andar.
   A: isee lee calũũ?
   B: hãã, farsT klaas-mẽẽ lee caloo. us-mẽẽ jagah hai?
   A: hãã, hai.

3. A: sunoo kulii, yee kaun-sii gaaRii hai.
   B: yee dillii ekspres hai.
   A: kyaa yee mathuraa ruktii hai?
   B: mujhee maaluum nahĩĩ saahab. us aadmii-see puuchiyee.

4. A: aap kis gaaRii-see jaaẽẽgee?
   B: das bajee-waalii gaaRii-see. aur aap, kis gaaRii-see jaa rahee hãĩ.
   A: abhii nau bajee-waalii gaaRii-see. pããc nambar-kaa pleeTfaarm kidhar hai.
   B: siidhee jaaiyee. baaĩĩ taraf hai.

5. A: kal mãĩ dillii jaaũũgaa, kyaa aap meeree-saath aa saktee hãĩ?
   B: zaruur aaũũgaa, kis gaaRii-see jaa rahee hãĩ.
   A: duun-ekspres-see.
   B: woo kab yahãã-see caltii hai.
   A: aaTh bajee saweeree.

6. A: suniyee, mujhee šahar-mẽẽ ghuumnaa hai. kyaa aap bhii calẽẽgee?
   B: mãĩ aap-kee saath aa saktaa hũũ, magar kuch jaldii hai.
   A: too rikšee-see calẽẽ?
   B: acchaa, pahlee taaj mahal calẽẽgee, phir ḳilee aur us-kee baad waapas aaẽẽgee.
   A: acchaa, too calẽẽ.

Unit III Part C

Conversation

1 makaan-kaa pataa lagaanaa

2 naii dillii, Taiksii sTainD

---

3 **Draaiwar:** kahiyee saahab, kidhar calnaa hai.

4 **wideešii:** naii bastii calẽẽgee.

4 **Draaiwar:** kyaa aap makaan-kaa nambar jaantee hãĩ?

6 **wideešii:** hãã, mujhee maaluum hai. ee baTaa sattaaiis.

7 **Draaiwar:** naii bastii-mẽẽ joo makaan hãĩ, un-kaa pataa lagaanaa baRaa muškil hai.

8 **wideešii:** kooii baat nahĩĩ, taalaaš too karnaa caahiyee hii.

9 **Draaiwar:** aap-kee doost too šaayad naii kooThii-mẽẽ rahtee hõõgee.

10 **wideešii:** mãĩ aaj pahlii baar hii jaa rahaa hũũ.

11 **Draaiwar:** acchaa, tab too wahãã-kee kisii aadmii-see puuchnaa hoogaa.

---

12 **Draaiwar:** naii bastii too aa gaii.

13 **wideešii:** bhaaii saahab, zaraa suniyee.

14 ee baTaa sattaaiis nambar-kaa makaan kis taraf hoogaa.

15 yahãã kahĩĩ likhaa nahĩĩ.

16 **aanee-jaanee-waalaa:** ee blaak too aglii saRak-par hai.

17 sattaaiis nambar biic-mẽẽ hoogaa.

---

18 **wideešii:** yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.

19 **aanee-jaanee-waalaa:** yahĩĩ nazdiik hii hai. meeree saath paidal caliyee. mãĩ dikhaa deetaa hũũ.

20 **wideešii:** baRii meharbaanii aap-kii.

---

21 **aanee-jaanee-waalaa:** yee rahaa saamnee aap-kaa makaan, joo aap DhũũDh rahee thee.

22 deekhiyee, nambar likhaa hai, phaaTak-par.

23 **wideešii:** jii hãã, yahii banglaa caahtaa thaa.

24 aap-koo bahut dhanywaad. baRaa kašT diyaa.

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

Draaiwar	A taxi driver (m)
wideešii	A Westerner (m)
aanee-jaanee-waalaa	A passerby (m)

	makaan	any building (m)
	pataa	address (m)
	pataa lagaanaa	to locate
1	makaan-kaa pataa lagaanaa.	Finding a house.
	naii dillii	New Delhi (f)
	Taiksii	taxi (f)
	sTainD	stand (m)
2	naii dillii, Taiksii sTainD.	New Delhi; a taxi stand.
3 D:	kahiyee saahab, kidhar calnaa hai.	Yes, sir, where do you want to go?
	bastii	colony (f)
	naii bastii	New Colony
4 W:	naii bastii calẽẽgee.	I'm going to New Colony.
	nambar	number (m)
	makaan-kaa nambar	house number
	jaannaa	to know
5 D:	kyaa aap makaan-kaa nambar jaantee hãĩ?	Do you know the house number?
	sattaaiis	twenty-seven
	baTaa	over (arithmetic)
	ee baTaa sattaaiis	A/27
6 W:	hãã, mujhee maaluum hai. ee baTaa sattaaiis.	Yes, I know it. A/27
	naii bastii-mẽẽ joo makaan hãĩ	those houses which are in Naii Bastii
7 D:	naii bastii-mẽẽ joo makaan hãĩ, un-kaa pataa lagaanaa baRaa muškil hai.	It's very hard to find those houses in Naii Bastii.
	taalaaš	search (f)
	taalaaš karnaa	to look for
	taalaaš karnaa caahiyee	it is necessary to look
8 W:	kooii baat nahĩĩ, taalaaš too karnaa caahiyee hii.	It doesn't matter. We'll just have to look.

	doost	friend (m/f)
	kooThii	dwelling, residence
	rahtee hõõgee	probably live
9 D:	aap-kee doost too šaayad naii kooThii-mẽẽ rahtee hõõgee.	I assume your friends live in a new dwelling.
	pahlaa	first (adj)
	baar	occasion (f)
	pahlii baar	for the first time
	jaa rahaa hũũ	I'm going
10 W:	mãĩ aaj pahlii baar hii jaa rahaa hũũ.	I'm going there for the very first time today.
	kisii	oblique of kooii
	wahãã-kaa kooii aadmii	some local man
	wahãã-kee kisii aadmii-see	from some local man
	puuchnaa hoogaa	will have to ask
11 D:	acchaa, tab too wahãã-kee kisii aadmii-see puuchnaa hoogaa.	All right, then we'll have to ask some local man.
	aa jaanaa	to come
	aa gaii	has come (f)
12 D:	naii bastii too aa gaii.	Well, here's Naii Bastii.
	zaraa suniyee	please listen a bit
13 W:	bhaaii saahab, zaraa suniyee.	Excuse me, sir.
	hoogaa	will be
14 W:	ee baTaa sattaaiis nambar-kaa makaan kis taraf hoogaa.	Which direction would Number A/27 be?
	kahĩĩ	anywhere (adv)
	likhaa	written (adj)
15 W:	yahãã kahĩĩ likhaa nahĩĩ.	It's not written anywhere here.
	blaak	block (m)
16 AJW:	ee blaak too aglii saRak-par hai.	'A' Block is on the next street.
	biic	middle (m)
17 AJW:	sattaaiis nambar biic-mẽẽ hoogaa.	Number 27 will be in the middle.
	duur	distance (f); distant, far (adv)
	kitnii duur	how far
18 W:	yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.	How far will that be from here?
	yahĩĩ	right here (yahãã hii)
	nazdiik	near (adv)
19 AJW:	yahĩĩ nazdiik hii hai.	It's very near here.

	paidal	on foot (adv)
	meeree saath	with me
	meeree saath paidal caliyee. mãĩ dikhaa deetaa hũũ.	Come with me on foot, I'll show it to you.
	meharbaanii	kindness (f)
20 W:	baRii meharbaanii aap-kii.	That's very kind of you.
	rahaa	remained
	saamnee	in front (adv)
	DhũũDhnaa	to search
21 AJW:	yee rahaa saamnee aap-kaa makaan, joo aap DhũũDh rahee thee.	There's your house ahead, that you were looking for.
	phaaTak	gate (m)
22 AJW:	deekhiyee, nambar likhaa hai, phaaTak-par.	See, the number is written on the gate.
	banglaa	bungalow
	caahnaa	to want
	caahtaa thaa	wanted
23 W:	jii hãã, yahii banglaa caahtaa thaa.	Yes, this is the very house I wanted.
	dhanywaad	thanks (m)
	kašT	trouble (m)
	diyaa	gave, given (deenaa)
	baRaa kašT diyaa	I gave you much trouble.
24 W:	aap-koo bahut dhanywaad. baRaa kašT diyaa.	Thank you very much for taking the trouble.

Cultural Notes

Finding a street address can be something of a problem in a rapidly-growing city like New Delhi. As the city is located in a flat, rocky desert without natural obstacles such as mountains which would limit the available building space, the city is spread over a large area and it is sometimes necessary to travel long distances across town to visit friends.

New housing is usually constructed in settlements or tracts (bastii) in which only the main streets receive distinguishable names. The majority of streets in each bastii are designated by a letter or number, and the houses in each by numbers -- but not necessarily consecutive numbers. Thus to find a private home, one must know the name of the bastii, the street and house number, as, "Motibagh Ring A/27," in which A indicates the street and 27 the house number.

Homes in the bastis are usually neat white or off-white one-story bungalows (banglaa or kooThii) with small yards filled with flowers, surrounded by a fence. Some houses are built Roman-style about an inner courtyard; others have patios at the rear. Newer and more affluent homes have two stories and are air-conditioned. Apartment buildings may also be found there. The bastis are constructed both by private contractors and by the Government. The inhabitants are mainly government servants, white-collar workers and businessmen.

Taxi drivers are the aristocrats among drivers of vehicles in Delhi. They are usually better educated than truck or tonga drivers, often speaking some English, but they are far more comfortable in Hindi. Taxi transportation is, of course, more expensive than other forms of public transportation.

Word Study

1. Ordinal numbers (adjectives)

pahlaa	first
duusraa	second
tiisraa	third
cauthaa	fourth
pããcwaa	fifth
chatwaa	sixth
saatwaa	seventh
aaThwaa	eighth
nawaa	ninth
daswaa	tenth
gyaarwaa	eleventh

Ordinals from 1 through 4 and 6 are irregular. After that the suffix -waa is used. If a number ends in -ah, as in gyaarah, this ending is dropped before -waa.

2. Related pairs

nazdiik	nearby
duur	far

aap-kii kooThii nazdiik hii hai.	Your house is near.
aap-kii kooThii duur hii hai.	Your house is far away.

DhũũDhnaa	look for
khoonaa	lose

is-koo nahĩĩ DhũũDhiyee.	Don't look for it.
is-koo nahĩĩ khooiyee.	Don't lose it.

3. Related phrases

kooii baat nahĩĩ.	It doesn't matter.
kyaa baat hai.	What's the matter.
acchii baat hai.	That's fine.

4. Words for housing

ghar	home	(m)
makaan	any building	(m)
banglaa	residence	
kooThii	residence	
baag̣	garden	(m)

Pronunciation Drills

1. The Urdu consonants ḳ, ḳh, g̣

A. Imitation drill

ḳism
ḳilaa
ḳamiiz
ḳariib
ḳalaam
ḳusuur
ḳismat
ḳaidii
ḳaumii

baaḳii
faaḳaa
mauḳaa
yaḳiin
taḳriir
nuḳsaan

banduuḳ
faraḳ
šauḳ

ḳhat
ḳhud
ḳhuub
ḳhaan
ḳhaas
ḳhyaal
ḳhušii
ḳharaab
ḳhariid

aaḳhiir
buḳhaar
daraḳht
aḳhbaar
ḳaarḳhaanaa

g̣alat
g̣ariib
g̣altii
g̣allaa
g̣arzaa

ḳaag̣az
baag̣ee
wag̣airaa

dimaag̣

B. Buildup drill

kitnii/ḳamiizẽẽ hãĩ.

aagree-kaa/ḳilaa deekhiyee.

dhoobii-kee/ghar-par/baaḳii kapRee hãĩ.

yee kaam/ḳhatam kiijiyee.

yee/kaam/ḳhaan saahab-kaa hai.

kyaa/yee ciizẽẽ/ḳhaas hãĩ?

yee keelaa/ḳharaab hai.

aap/kyaa/ḳhariidẽẽgee.

rikšee-waalaa/g̣ariib aadmii hai.

kitaab-mẽẽ/kitnii/g̣altii hãĩ.

is/kaag̣az-par/likhiyee.

C. Additive drill

Add ḳhaan saahab.

Instructor: apnaa kaam ḳhatam karẽẽgee.
Class: ḳhaan saahab, apnaa kaam ḳhatam karẽẽgee.

ḳilaa deekhẽẽgee.
ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaaẽẽgee.
g̣alat nahĩĩ karẽẽgee.
eek ḳamiiz ḳhariidẽẽgee.
ḳharaab ciizẽẽ nahĩĩ ḳhariidẽẽgee.
baaḳii kaag̣az ḳhariidẽẽgee.

2. Dh

Compare the following pairs of words as your instructor reads them.

Dhaaii	2 1/2	Dharnaa	to roll
dhaaii	a nurse	Darnaa	to fear
Dhoonaa	to carry	Dhaal	a slope
dhoonaa	to wash	Daal	a branch

A. Imitation drill

Dhak
Dhar
Dhoo
Dheer
Dhaaii
Dhooii
DhũũDh

DhũũDhaa
DhũũDhee
DhũũDhii
DhũũDhtii
DhũũDhtee
DhũũDhtaa
DhũũDhnaa

B. Additive drill

Add Dhaaii.

Instructor: din hõõgee.
Class: Dhaaii din hõõgee.

saal
minaT
haftaa

ghanTaa
mahiinaa

3. Dh-D contrasted

A. Additive drill

Add DeeRh yaa Dhaaii.

Instructor: din.
Class: DeeRh yaa Dhaaii din.

saal
minaT
haftaa

ghanTaa
sekand
mahiinaa

4. Dh-dh contrasted

A. Additive drill

Add Dhaaii bajee.

Instructor: kapRee dhoonaa.
Class: Dhaaii bajee kapRee dhoonaa.

dhootii dhulaaoo.
aap kidhar jaaẽẽgee.
dhoobii aaeegaa.
dhiiree aatee hãĩ.
idhar aaoo.
is-koo dhulaaii doo.
widyaarthii dhiiree dhiiree aatee hãĩ.

5. Voiced aspirates reviewed

A. Imitation drill

bhii
abhii
bhaaii
sãbhalnaa
sãbhaalnaa

dhoo
dhoobii
dhootaa
dhulaa
dhulaaii
dhiiree
dhabbee
siidhee
kidhar

Dhaaii
DhũũDh
DhũũDhaa
DhũũDhee
DhũũDhii

jhoolaa
jhoolee
mujhee
samjhee
samjhaa
samjhii

ghar
ghanTaa
ghanTee
ghuumee
ghuumaa
ghuumtaa

B. Buildup drill

mujhee/ghuumnaa hai.

aap kidhar/ghuumẽẽgee.

bhaaii saahab,/sãbhalnaa.

ghar/DhũũDhnaa hai.

sãbhal-kar,/dhiiree caloo.

dhoobii-koo/dhulaaii doo.

yee meeree/bhaaii-kaa/jhoolaa hai.

bhaaii saahab/ghar/DhũũDhẽẽgee.

Dhaaii ghanTee-mẽẽ,/mujhee/šahar ghuumnaa hai.

meeree/bhaaii-kaa/ghar/udhar hai.

kyaa/dhoobii/kapRee/dhoo rahaa hai?

yee/laRkii/us-kaa/bhaaii/sãbhaaltii hai.

6. Flexibility with longer sentences

A. Buildup drill

kyaa/laRkaa/apnee/doost-kee/makaan-kaa/nambar/jaantaa hai?

laRkee-kee/doost-kee/makaan-kaa nambar/ee baTaa/sattaaiis hai.

naii bastii-mẽẽ/joo naee makaan hãĩ,/un-kaa/pataa lagaanaa/baRaa/muškil hai.

laRkee-kee/doost/naii/kooThii-mẽẽ/rahtee hãĩ yaa nahĩĩ.

acchaa,/tab too/wahãã-kee/kisii/dukaandaar-see/puuchnaa hoogaa.

is saRak-par,/Dii baTaa chabbiis/nambar-kaa makaan/kis taraf hoogaa.

yahãã kahĩĩ/bii baTaa/aTThaaiis/likhaa nahĩĩ.

mãĩ dikhaa/deetaa hũũ/agar/aap loog/meeree saath/paidal calẽẽ.

yee rahaa/banglee-kee paas/aap-kaa/makaan/joo/aap/taalaaš kar rahee thee.

B. Expansion drill

Repeat Drill A as an expansion drill, e.g.,

jaantaa hai?
nambar
makaan-kaa
doost-kee
apnee
laRkaa
kyaa

Grammar Drills

1. Pattern expansion

1.1 Pattern 1

A. Substitution drill

Yes, sir, where do you want to go?

kahiyee saahab, (kidhar calnaa) hai.
kidhar jaanaa
kidhar ghuumnaa
kahãã deekhnaa
kahãã DhũũDhnaa
kahãã pahũcnaa

B. Substitution drill

I'm going to New Delhi.

(naii dillii) calẽẽgee.
sTeešan
ašookaa hooTal
naii bastii
baazaar
ghar

C. Chain drill

Draaiwar: kahiyee saahab, kidhar calnaa hai.
saahab: naii bastii calẽẽgee.

Draaiwar: kahiyee meem saahab, kidhar jaanaa hai.
saahab: baazaar calẽẽgee.

1.2 Pattern 2

A. Substitution drill

Do you know the number of the house?

kyaa aap (makaan)-kaa nambar jaantee hãĩ.
banglee
kooThii
ghar
pleeTfaarm
kulii
kamree

B. Substitution drill

Yes, I know it. It's A/27.

hãã, mujhee maaluum hai. (ee baTaa sattaaiis).
bii baTaa pacciis
sii baTaa teeiis
Dii baTaa ikkiis
ii baTaa unniis

C. Chain drill

hindustaanii:	kyaa aap makaan-kaa nambar jaantee hãĩ?
wideešii:	hãã, mujhee maaluum hai. ee baTaa sattaaiis.
hindustaanii:	kyaa aap kulii-kaa nambar jaantee hãĩ?
wideešii:	hãã, mujhee maaluum hai. das hai.

1.3 Pattern 3

A. Substitution-agreement drill

Which direction would number A/27 be?

(ee baTaa sattaaiis nambar-kaa makaan) kis taraf hoogaa.
aap-kaa makaan
puraanee makaan
aap-kii bastii
baRii kooThiyãã
aap-kee doost-kaa ghar
acchii dukaanẽẽ
naee banglee
kapRee-kii dukaan
taaj mahal

B. Substitution drill

It's next to the Swiss Hotel.

(swis hooTal-kee paas) hai.
aglee blaak-mẽẽ
puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ
nazdiik hii
sTeešan-kee piichee
ḳilee-kee nazdiik

C. Double substitution-agreement drill

Number 27 will be in the middle.

(sattaaiis nambar) (biic-mẽẽ) hoogaa.
aap-kaa makaan
nazdiik
aap-kii bastii
udhar
naee banglee
naii bastii-mẽẽ
acchii dukaanẽẽ
us saRak-par

D. Chain drill

Instructor:	Which direction would number B/10 be?
1st Student:	It's in the middle of the next street.
Instructor:	bii baTaa das nambar-kaa makaan kis taraf hoogaa.
1st Student:	aglii saRak-par hai.
1st Student:	naee banglee kis taraf hõõgee.
2nd Student:	us taraf hõõgee.
2nd Student:	aap-kii bastii kahãã hai.
3rd Student:	naii dillii-mẽẽ hai.

1.4 Pattern 4

A. Substitution-agreement drill

How far would A block be from here?

(ee blaak) yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.
swis hooTal
sTeešan
ḳilaa
puraanaa baazaar
Taiksii sTainD
naii bastii
taaj mahal

B. Substitution drill

It's right near here.

(yahĩĩ nazdiik hii) hai.
aglee blaak-mẽẽ
bahut duur
caar blaak
sTeešan-kee paas
sTeešan-kee nazdiik
swis hooTal-kee paas
šahar-kee baahar

C. Chain drill

wideešii: ee blaak yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.
hindustaanii: yahĩĩ nazdiik hii hai.

wideešii: swis hooTal yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.
hindustaanii: aglee blaak-mẽẽ hai.

D. Chain drill

Combine Patterns 3 and 4.

wideešii: Taiksii sTainD kis taraf hoogaa.
hindustaanii: sTeešan-kee nazdiik hai.

wideešii: taaj mahal kitnii duur hoogaa.
hindustaanii: šahar-kee baahar hai.

wideešii: is šahar-kaa sTeešan kahãã hai.
hindustaanii: bahut duur hai. Taiksii sTainD-kee paas hai.

2. hoogaa to indicate an assumption

When hoogaa is used in a verb construction following a present participle the meaning is similar to that conveyed by the English 'probably' or 'I assume that. . . .'

aap-kee doost too šaayad naii kooThii-mẽẽ rahtee hõõgee.
woo naii saRak-par rahtee hõõgee. I assume they live on Nai Sarak.

Other hoogaa constructions have similar meanings in certain contexts.

kisii-see puuchnaa hoogaa. (I assume) We'll have to ask someone.
woo udhar hoogaa. (I assume) He'll be over there.

A. Substitution drill

Your friend probably lives in a new house.

aap-kee doost (naii kooThii-mẽẽ rahtee) hõõgee.
swis hooTal-mẽẽ Thairtee
baazaar-mẽẽ ghuumtee
kapRee beectee
duun ekspres-see jaatee
naii bastii jaantee
makaan DhũũDhtee

B. Substitution-agreement drill

Your friend probably doesn't live in a new house.

(aap-kee doost) naee banglee-mẽẽ nahĩĩ rahtee hõõgee.
aap-kii doost
hamaaraa Draaiwar
yee laRkiyãã
woo loog
meeraa dhoobii

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor:	aap-kee doost kahãã hãĩ.	Where is your friend?
1st Student:	ghar-par hõõgee.	He's probably at home.
Instructor:	woo bairaa kahãã kaam kartaa hai.	
2nd Student:	hooTal-mẽẽ kaam kartaa hoogaa.	

Instructor:
wideešii kahãã Thairtii hai.
woo gaaRii kab caltii hai.
yee rikšaa kidhar jaataa hai.
woo yaatrii kyaa paRhtaa hai.
dhoobii kyaa Thiik kartaa hai.
yee dukaandaar kyaa beectee hãĩ.
kyaa bajaa hai.
meem saahab kis-kii intizaar kartii hãĩ.
woo laRkii kahãã jaatii hai.
aap-kii doost kis klaas-mẽẽ paRhtii hãĩ.

3. The infinitive phrase as subject of the sentence

The Hindi infinitive, because it is grammatically a noun, may occur as the subject of a verb phrase. When this is the case, the infinitive takes the same position as any other noun.

boolnaa muškil hai. It is difficult to speak.

The infinitive may also act as the subject of a verb phrase when it appears in conjunction with other words in an infinitive phrase:

pataa lagaanaa muškil hai. It is difficult to find an address.

Notice that the order of phrases tends to be reversed in English where the infinitive phrase appears at the end of the sentence.

A. Substitution drill

It's difficult to find the address.

(is makaan-kaa pataa lagaanaa) muškil hai.
naii mooTar ḳhariidnaa
bhaarii ciizẽẽ lee calnaa
saaraa šahar deekhnaa
taaj mahal paidal jaanaa
juutee Thiik karnaa
bangaalii samajhnaa
hindii boolnaa

B. Substitution drill

It will be easy for you to go to India.

aap-kee liyee (hindustaan jaanaa) aasaan hoogaa.
taaj mahal deekhnaa
kašmiir jaanaa
hindii-mẽẽ baat ciit karnaa
hindustaaniyõõ-kee saath rahnaa
rikšee-mẽẽ baiThnaa
naii bastii jaanaa
kulii bulaanaa

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor:	kulii-kaa kaam kyaa hai.	What is the job of a porter?
1st Student:	us-kaa kaam saamaan lee calnaa hai.	His job is to carry luggage.
Instructor:	dhoobii-kaa kaam kyaa hai.	
2nd Student:	us-kaa kaam kapRee dhoonaa hai.	
Instructor:	bairee-kaa kaam kyaa hai. moocii-kaa kaam kyaa hai. dukaandaar-kaa kaam kyaa hai. phal-waalee-kaa kaam kyaa hai. rikšee-waalee-kaa kaam kyaa hai. Taiksii waalee-kaa kaam kyaa hai. aap-kaa kaam kyaa hai.	

4. The -aa participle

-aa participles are formed from verbs by the addition of the adjective endings aa, ee, ii, ĩĩ to the verb root. They function grammatically as marked adjectives, changing their endings in accordance with the gender and number of the subject, similarly to thaa, the past of hai. As with thaa, the ĩĩ forms are used only when the participle is at the end of a phrase and is not followed by a form of hai.

yahãã kahĩĩ likhaa nahĩĩ.
sab likhee hãĩ.

When the verb stem ends in -aa or -ii as in dikhaanaa 'to show' and piinaa 'to drink,' the -aa ending is preceded by a -y-. The verbs leenaa, deenaa and karnaa have the irregular participles liyaa, diyaa and kiyaa. Here is a list illustrating the regular and irregular forms:

likhnaa	dikhaanaa	deenaa	
likhaa	dikhaayaa	diyaa	(m sg)
likhii	dikhaaii	dii	(f sg)
likhee	dikhaaee	diee	(m pl)
likhĩĩ	dikhaaĩĩ	dĩĩ	(f pl)

Some words which were introduced as adjectives in the conversations are actually -aa participles. Thus phaTaa is derived from phaTnaa 'to be torn.'

The -aa participle as a rule signifies that an action has taken place or a state has set in, in contrast to the -taa participle and the rahaa construction which indicate something going on regularly, or in progress at the time. Compare the following:

woo likhaa hai.	It is written.
woo likhtaa hai.	He writes.
woo likh rahaa hai.	He is writing.

Note that the grammatical subject woo refers to the performer of the action with the -taa and rahaa constructions, whereas it designates the person or thing that undergoes the action when it appears with the -aa participle.

-aa participles are frequently used in Hindi in constructions equivalent to the English past (e.g., 'I went,' but not 'I used to go'). Many of these constructions, however, have certain grammatical peculiarities in Hindi and will be covered separately in Unit IV.

A. Substitution-agreement drill

Look, the number is written right here.

deekhiyee, (nambar) yahĩĩ likhaa hai.
ciizẽẽ
paisee
kurtee
saaRii-kaa daam
singh saahab-kaa naam
pleeTfaarm-kaa nambar

B. Substitution-agreement drill

Where are the shoes kept?

(juutaa) kahãã rakhaa hai.
kapRee
kitaabẽẽ
saamaan
paanii
meerii saaRii
aap-kii dhootii

C. Substitution-agreement drill

Are your shoes torn?

kyaa aap-kaa (juutaa) (phaTaa) hai?
saRii
kurtee
moozaa
dhootiyãã
kaagaz
kitaab
TikaT

D. Double substitution-agreement drill

The shoes are kept right there.

(juutaa) (wahĩĩ) rakhaa hai.
pensilẽẽ
meez-kee uupar
kitaab
meeree paas
kapRee
us kamree-mẽẽ

E. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Are all the clothes noted down?	Yes, they are all noted down.
kyaa sab kapRee likhee hãĩ?	haa, likhee hãĩ.
kyaa gaaRii sTeesan-par rukii hai?	rukii hai.
kyaa mooTar-see bakas niklaa hai?	niklaa hai.
kyaa sab khiRkiyãã khulii hãĩ?	khulii hãĩ.
kyaa wideešii naii bastii-mẽẽ Thairaa hai?	Thairaa hai.
kyaa nambar likhaa hai?	likhaa hai.
kyaa ḳamiiz meez-par rakhii hai?	rakhii hai.
kyaa rikšaa udhar rukhaa hai?	rakhii hai.
kyaa dukaan-see aadmii niklee hãĩ?	niklee hãĩ.
kyaa aap-kee bakas khulee hãĩ?	khulee hãĩ.

F. Substitution-agreement drill

The bedding is placed next to the box.

(bistar) bakas-kee paas rakh diyaa hai.
kursii
ciizẽẽ
saamaan
meeree kooT
aap-kii saaRiyãã
jhoolaa
doo jhoolee

G. Substitution-agreement drill

Use the substitutions in Drill G.

(bistar) bakas-kee paas rakh liyaa hai.

5. Relative pronouns

Aside from the interrogative pronouns, such as kaun and kaisaa which are characterized by an initial k. Hindi has an additional set of pronouns which start with the consonant j-: e.g., joo 'who, which, that,' jaisaa 'as.' These are used to indicate relationships between utterances:

yee rahaa saamnee aap-kaa makaan, joo aap DhũũDh rahee thee.
duun ekspres-see joo saharanpur-mẽẽ ruktii hoo.
jaisaa aap kahẽẽ.

Whereas Hindi always draws a distinction between the relative joo and the interrogative kaun, English renders these by the same word: 'who' or 'which.'

The singular and plural oblique of joo are jis and jin.

woo laRkaa joo kahãã rahtaa hai.	The boy who lives here.
woo laRkaa jis-kaa makaan yahãã hai.	The boy whose house is here.
woo laRkee jin-kee doost yahãã hãĩ.	The boys whose friends are here.

In contrast to English, where the relative 'who' or 'which' always introduces the so-called dependent clause, the position of Hindi joo varies. It quite frequently occurs in the first of two related clauses, as in the example below:

naii bastii-mẽẽ joo makaan hãĩ, un-kaa pataa lagaanaa muškil hai.

Note that the un-kaa in the second clause mirrors the joo in the first. A literal English translation would be: 'In naii bastii what buildings are, their address is difficult to get.'

A. Substitution-agreement drill

Here's the house that you were looking for.

yee aap-kaa (makaan) hai, joo aap DhũũDh rahee thee.
banglaa
kooThii
kurtee
saaRiyãã
jhoolaa
moozee
blaauz

B. Substitution drill

Here is the sari she was selling.

yee rahii woo saaRii joo woo (beec) rahii thii.
k̤hariid
saaf-kar
dhoo
DhũũDh

C. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
This is a taxi. It stops here.	See below.

yee Taiksii hai. yahãã Thairtii hai.
yee gaaRii hai. mathuraa ruktii hai.
yee makaan hai. naii bastii-mẽẽ hai.
yee rikšee hãĩ. taaj mahal jaatee hãĩ.
yee phal-kii dukaan hai. aglii saRak-par hai.
yee nambar hai. udhar likhaa hai.
yee jhoolaa hai. gaaRii-mẽẽ thaa.
yee khiRkii hai. band thii.
yee aadmii hãĩ. meerii madad kartee thee.
yee paanii hai. aap pii nahĩĩ saktee.
yee makaan hai. aap is-koo DhũũDh rahee thee.
yee juutee hãĩ. phaTee thee.

Class

This is the taxi that stops here.

yee woo Taiksii hai joo yahãã Thairtii hai.
yee woo gaaRii hai joo mathuraa ruktii hai.
yee woo makaan hai joo naii bastii-mẽẽ hai.
yee woo rikšee hãĩ joo taaj mahal jaatee hãĩ.
yee woo phal-kii dukaan hai joo aglii saRak-par hai.
yee woo nambar hai joo udhar likhaa hai.
yee woo jhoolaa hai joo gaaRii-mẽẽ thaa.

yee woo khiRkii hai joo band thii.
yee woo aadmii hãĩ joo meerii madad kartee thee.
yee woo paanii hai joo aap pii nahĩĩ saktee.
yee woo juutee hãĩ joo phaTee thee.
yee woo makaan hai joo aap DhũũDh rahee thee.

D. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: .Is that the sari that you liked?
1st Student: Yes, this is the very one that I liked.

Instructor: kyaa woo wahii saaRii hai joo aap-koo pasand thii?
1st Student: hãã, wahii saaRii hai joo mujhee pasand thii.

Instructor: kyaa yee wahii makaan hai joo aap-koo pasand thaa?
2nd Student: hãã, yahii makaan hai joo mujhee pasand thaa.

Instructor: kyaa yee wahii miThaaii hai joo aap-koo pasand thii?
kyaa woo wahii phal hai joo aap-koo pasand thaa?
kyaa woo wahii moozee hãĩ joo aap-koo pasand thee?
kyaa yee wahii banglee hãĩ joo aap-koo pasand thee?
kyaa yee wahii baagh hai joo aap-koo pasand thaa?
kyaa woo wahii kooThiyãã hãĩ joo aap-koo pasand thĩĩ?
kyaa yee wahii makaan hãĩ joo aap-koo pasand thee?
kyaa woo wahii Taiksii hai joo aap-koo pasand thii?

E. Transformation drill: joo to jis-koo, jin-koo

Instructor	Class
Here's the station that we were looking for.	
yee hai sTeešan joo ham DhũũDh rahee thee.	...jis-koo ham...
yee hãĩ moozee joo ham dhulaa rahee thee.	...jin-koo ham...
yee hai saaRii joo ham deekh rahee thee.	...jis-koo ham...
yee hãĩ kooThiyãã joo ham ḳhariid rahee thee.	...jin-koo ham...
yee hai banglaa joo ham taalaaš kar rahee thee.	...jis-koo ham...
yee hai kursii joo ham Thiik kar rahee thee.	...jis-koo ham...
yee hãĩ ciizẽẽ joo ham DhũũDh rahee thee.	...jin-koo ham...

F. Transformation drill: jis-koo, jin-koo to joo

Repeat Drill E. in reverse.

Instructor	Class
yee hai sTeešan jis-koo ham DhũũDh rahee thee.	...joo ham...

G. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
This is a house. You were looking for it.	See below.

yee makaan hai. aap is-koo DhũũDh rahee thee.
yee rikšaa hai. aap is-koo bulaa rahee hãĩ.
yee dukaanẽẽ hãĩ. aap un-koo jaantee hãĩ.
yee kooThii hai. aap-kee doost us-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
yee meez hai. jhoolaa us-par thaa.
yee gaaRii hai. saamaan is-mẽẽ piichee hai.
yee saaRiyãã hãĩ. aap un-koo ḳhariid rahii thĩĩ.

yee dhootii hai. us-par piilee dhabbee hãĩ.
yee aadmii hai. us-koo bahut kaam hai.
yee widyaarthii hãĩ. un-koo hindii aatii hai.

Class

This is the very house that you were looking for.

yee wahii makaan hai jis-koo aap DhũũDh rahee thee.
rikšaa hai jis-koo aap bulaa rahee hãĩ.
dukaanẽẽ hãĩ jin-koo aap jaantee hãĩ.
kooThii hai jis-mẽẽ aap-kee doost rahtee hãĩ.
meez hai jis-par jhoolaa thaa.
gaaRii hai jis-kee piichee saamaan hai.
saaRiyãã hãĩ jin-koo aap ḳhariid rahii thĩĩ.
dhootii hai jis-par piilee dhabbee hãĩ.
aadmii hai jis-koo bahut kaam hai.
widyaarthii hãĩ jin-koo hindii aatii hai.

6. caahnaa and caahiyee

caahnaa may be used either as a single verb in the sense of English 'want' or after a verbal infinitive in the meaning 'intend to' or 'want to.' In the latter constructions caahnaa is inflected while the infinitive does not change.

yahii makaan caahtaa thaa.	I wanted that very building.
mãĩ jaanaa caahtaa hũũ.	I want to go.
mãĩ hindii boolnaa caahtaa hũũ.	I want to speak Hindi.

caahiyee, although ultimately related to caahnaa, functions as a separate indirect verb. In addition to the uses illustrated in previous units, it may be employed after verbal infinitives in indirect verb constructions which are grammatically similar to the infinitive plus hai constructions and in which the infinitive agrees with the grammatical subject.

The differences in meaning are illustrated by the examples below.

mãĩ caar bajee jaanaa caahtaa hũũ.	I want to go at four o'clock.
mujhee caar bajee jaanaa hai.	I am to leave at four o'clock.
mujhee caar bajee jaanaa caahiyee.	I have to (ought to) leave at four o'clock.

The use of caahiyee in the above constructions indicates a sense of obligation or necessity which may be rendered by English 'ought to' or 'have to,' depending on the context. The use of an infinitive plus hai, on the other hand, signifies that something is planned or is to be done, a concept for which there is no direct English equivalent, and which may be translated in various ways depending on the context.

A. Substitution drill: men

I want to go to Saharanpur.

mãĩ (sahaaranpur jaanaa) caahtaa hũũ.
kapRee dhulaanaa
miThaaii ḳhariidnaa
moocii bulaanaa
sawaal puuchnaa
hindii boolnaa
ḳilaa deekhnaa
wahãã Thairnaa

B. Substitution drill: women

Repeat Drill A.

mãĩ (sahaaranpur jaanaa) caahtii hũũ.

C. Double substitution-agreement drill

The porter wants to pick up this bag.

(kulii) (yee jhoolaa uThaanaa) caahtaa hai.
saahab
TikaT ḳhariidnaa
laRkii
sawaal puuchnaa
bairaa
kamraa saaf karnaa
meem saahab

D. Individual conversational response drill

Give any appropriate answer that is based on the conversation.

Instructor: What does the porter want to keep?
1st Student: He wants to keep my baggage.

Instructor: kulii kyaa rakhnaa caahtaa hai?
1st Student: meeraa saamaan.

Instructor: saahab kyaa ciiz leenaa caahtee hãĩ.
phal-waalaa kyaa phal dikhaanaa caahtaa hai.
wideešii kidhar jaanaa caahtaa hai.
kapRee-waalaa kyaa beecnaa caahtaa hai.
yaatrii kyaa khoolnaa caahtaa hai.
meem saahab kyaa dhulaanaa caahtii hãĩ.
saahab kis klaas-mẽẽ jaanaa caahtee hãĩ.
laRkaa kis makaan-kaa pataa lagaanaa caahtaa hai.
dhoobii kidhar deekhnaa caahtaa hai.

E. Chain drill

Repeat Drill D as a chain drill with each student asking a question based on the conversations.

F. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Can you go to the market?	See below.

kyaa aap loog baazaar jaa saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog saaRii ḳhariid saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog ḳhaas imaartẽẽ deekh saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog meeree saath aa saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog us aadmii-see puuch saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog kurtaa DhũũDh saktee hãĩ.
kyaa aap loog bakas apnee saath rakh saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog saahab-koo udhar lee cal saktee hãĩ?
kyaa aap loog darwaazaa khool saktee hãĩ.
kyaa aap loog meeraa bistar uThaa saktee hãĩ?

Class

Yes, the market is just where we wanted to go.

hãã, baazaar hii jaanaa caahtee thee.
saaRii hii ḳhariidnaa caahtee thee.
ḳhaas imaartẽẽ hii deekhnaa caahtee thee.
aap-kee saath hii jaanaa caahtee thee.
us aadmii hii-see puuchnaa caahtee thee.
kurtaa hii DhũũDhnaa caahtee thee.
bakas hii apnee saath rakhnaa caahtee thee.
saahab hii-koo udhar lee calnaa caahtee thee.
darwaazaa hii khoolnaa caahtee thee.
aap-kaa bistar hii uThaanaa caahtee thee.

7. *lagnaa*, *milnaa* and *aanaa* in indirect verb constructions

The above verb forms commonly occur in indirect verb constructions with the special meanings 'be struck by or be affected by,''be available,' and 'be in control of something,' respectively.

mujhee pyaas *lagtii* *hai*.
mujhee eek ghanTaa *lagtaa* *hai*. It takes me one hour.
tumhẽẽ baaraa aanee ghanTaa *mileegaa*.
aap-koo hindii too acchii tarah *aatii* *hai*.

A. Individual conversational response drill: *milnaa*

Instructor:	hooTal-mẽẽ aap-koo kaun mileegaa.	Who will you find in a hotel?
1st Student:	aap-koo bairee milẽẽgee.	You'll find room bearers.
Instructor:	sTeešan-par aap-koo kyaa mileegaa.	
2nd Student:	aap-koo gaaRii mileegii.	
Instructor:	cããdnii cauk-mẽẽ kyaa mileegaa.	
	naii bastii-mẽẽ	
	hooTal-kee paas	
	baRee šahar-mẽẽ	
	aagree-mẽẽ	
	kapRee-kii dukaan-par	
	nainiital-mẽẽ	
	klaas-mẽẽ	
	gaaRii-kee andar	

B. Chain drill: *milnaa*

Repeat Drill A as a chain drill using any place mentioned in the conversations.

C. Substitution-agreement drill: *lagnaa*

How do you like the Taj Mahal?

aap-koo (*taaj mahal*) *kaisaa lagtaa hai*.
dillii-kee baazaar
aagree-kaa ḳilaa
dillii
woo naee makaan
hindustaan
yahãã-kii miThaaii
hindustaanii khaanaa
hindii boolnaa
paidal jaanaa
banaarsii saaRiyãã

D. Substitution-agreement drill: *acchaa*, *lagnaa*

Use the substitutions from Drill C.

I like the Taj Mahal very much.

(*taaj mahal*) mujhee bahut *acchaa lagtaa hai*.

E. Chain drill

Combine Drills C and D into a chain drill.

hindustaanii: How do you like Indian food?
wideešii: I like it very much.

hindustaanii: aap-koo hindustaanii khaanaa kaisaa lagtaa hai.
wideešii: mujhee bahut pasand aataa hai.

hindustaanii: dillii-kee baazaar kaisee lagtee hãĩ.
wideešii: mujhee bahut acchee lagtee hãĩ.

F. Substitution-agreement drill: *aanaa*

Hindi comes easily to me.

mujhee (*hindii*) acchii tarah *aatii* hai.
hindii boolnaa
urduu
urduu likhnaa
angreezii
angreezii paRhnaa

G. Substitution drill: *lagnaa*

I'm thirsty.

mujhee (pyaas) lagtii hai.
dhuup
garmii
ThanD
bhuukh

H. Chain drill

Instructor: kyaa saweeree aap-koo ThanD lagtii hai? Are you cold in the morning?
1st Student: nahĩĩ, mujhee garmii lagtii hai. No, I'm warm.

1st Student: kyaa doo pahar aap-koo bhuukh lagtii hai?
2nd Student: nahĩĩ, mujhee pyaas lagtii hai.

8. *aisaa*, *kaisaa*, *jaisaa*

The relative *jaisaa* 'as' corresponds to *aisaa* 'like' and *kaisaa* 'how.' Grammatically it functions as a marked adjective. *aisaa* is usually followed by *hii* when it is paired with *jaisaa*.

mãĩ aisaa hii kaam karũũgaa, jaisaa aap kahẽẽ.	I'll work as you tell me to.
mãĩ aisii hii baat karũũgaa, jaisii aap kahẽẽ.	I'll talk as you say.
aisaa makaan yahãã nahĩĩ hai.	There's no such building here.

When aisaa, kaisaa or jaisaa occurs with the oblique ending, -ee, without agreeing with a noun, it corresponds to an English adverbial construction, e.g., kaisee 'in what way,' jaisee 'in the way that.'

aap loog aisee nahĩĩ pii sakẽẽgee.	
mãĩ aisee hii nahĩĩ booltaa, jaisee aap booltee hãĩ.	I don't talk as you do.

A. Conversational response drill

dukaandaar	gaahak
What kind of cloth should I show you?	Whatever you have.
aap-koo kaisaa kapRaa dikhaaũũ.	jaisaa aap-kee paas hoo.
aap-koo kaisii saaRii dikhaaũũ.	jaisii hoo.
aap-koo kaisee juutee dikhaaũũ.	jaisee hõõ.
aap-koo kaisaa phal dikhaaũũ.	jaisaa hoo.
aap-koo kaisii miThaaii dikhaaũũ.	jaisii hoo.
aap-koo kaisee moozee dikhaaũũ.	jaisee hõõ.
aap-koo kaisii rooTii dikhaaũũ.	jaisii hoo.
aap-koo kaisaa kurtaa dikhaaũũ.	jaisaa hoo.
aap-koo kaisaa saamaan dikhaaũũ.	jaisaa hoo.
aap-koo kaisii ciizẽẽ dikhaaũũ.	jaisii hõõ.

B. Chain drill

Repeat Drill A as a chain drill, using any items that can be bought.

C. Substitution drill

As you say, sir.

jaisaa (aap kahẽẽ) saahab.
aap bataaẽẽ
aap caahẽẽ
aap-kee paas hoo
aap-koo caahiyee
aap-koo pasand hoo

D. Chain drill

Use any possible answer in Drill C.

Instructor:	kaisee sawaal puuchũũ.	What kind of questions should I ask?
1st Student:	jaisee aap caahẽẽ.	Whatever you like.
1st Student:	kaisii ciizẽẽ dikhaaũũ.	
2nd Student:	jaisii aap-kee paas hõõ.	

E. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
How should I do this work?	Do it like this.
yee kaam kaisee karũũ.	aisee kiijiyee.
yee Taiksii kaisee bulaaũũ.	bulaaiyee.
yee rooTii kaisee khaaũũ.	khaaiyee.
yee hindii kaisee likhũũ.	likhiyee.
is rikšee-mẽẽ kaisee baiThũũ.	baiThiyee.
yee khiRkii kaisee khoolũũ.	khooliyee.
yee saaRii kaisee dhooũũ.	dhooiyee.
yee bistar kaisee rakh dũũ.	rakh diijiyee.

9. kooii, kuch

kooii and kuch function as both pronouns and adjectives and may be used with persons and objects. kooii has the oblique kisii. kuch has no special oblique form.

kuch kam kiijiyee.
kooii jaldii nahĩĩ.
kooii aadmii nahĩĩ hai.
tab too kisii aadmii-see puuchnaa hoogaa.

While kooii refers to individual items and things, e.g., some one banana, a particular kind of fruit, a particular person, kuch refers to a quantity taken as a whole and forming part of a larger unit, e.g., some fruit, some people. With countable nouns it occurs only with the plural.

kuch keelee hãĩ. There are some bananas.

Since kooii singles out individual items, it tends to emphasize these items and as a result is used more frequently in negative statements and in questions.

kuch kaam hai.	There is some work.
kyaa kooii kaam hai.	Is there any work?
kooii kaam nahĩĩ.	There isn't any work.

It is also possible, however, to use kuch in the above questions and in negative statements.

When used without a following noun, the compound kuch nahĩĩ means 'nothing' and kooii nahĩĩ means 'no one' or 'no one thing.'

kuch nahĩĩ hai.	There's nothing.
kooii nahĩĩ hai.	There's no one. (or) There's not one thing.

kooii and kuch may also combine with aur in constructions equivalent to the English 'some more,' 'another.' In such expressions, aur may precede any word in the sentence, depending on the emphasis.

aur kooii aadmii hai.	There is some other man.
kooii aur aadmii hai.	There is another man.
kooii aadmii aur hai.	There is another man in addition.

A. Substitution drill: kooii

Are there any bananas?

kyaa kooii (keelaa) hai?
kaam
peeRaa
rikšaa
saamaan
jaldii
phal
miThaaii
jhoolaa
kaag̣az

B. Substitution-agreement drill: kuch

There are some bananas.

kuch (keelee) hãĩ.
paališ
bakas
Taiksii
peeRee
rikšee
saamaan
kulii
dhoobii
paanii
jaldii
miThaaii
jhoolee

C. Conversational response drill: kuch

Instructor	Class
Is there any water?	Yes, there's a little water.
kyaa paanii hai?	jii hãã, kuch paanii hai.
kyaa kaam hai?	kaam hai.
kyaa khurcan hai?	khurcan hai.
kyaa peeRee hãĩ.	peeRee hãĩ.
kyaa beer hãĩ?	beer hãĩ.
kyaa jaldii hai?	jaldii hai.
kyaa miThaaii hai?	miThaaii hai.
kyaa saaRiyãã hãĩ?	saaRiyãã hãĩ.
kyaa phal hai?	phal hai.
kyaa aadmii hãĩ?	aadmii hãĩ.

D. Conversational response drill: kuch

Repeat Drill A with the class giving a negative response using kuch.

Instructor	Class
Is there any water?	No, there isn't any water at all.
kyaa paanii hai?	nahĩĩ, kuch bhii paanii nahĩĩ hai.

E. Conversational response drill: kooii

Repeat Drill A as a conversational response drill using kooii . . . nahĩĩ.

Instructor	Class
Are there any bananas?	There's not a single banana.
kyaa keelee hãĩ?	nahĩĩ, kooii keelaa nahĩĩ hai.

F. Chain drill: kuch, kooii

Use kuch in affirmative answers and kooii in negative answers.

Instructor: Is there any fruit?
1st Student: Yes, there's some. (or) No, there isn't any.

Instructor: kyaa kooii phal hai?
1st Student: hãã, kuch hãĩ. (or) nahĩĩ, kooii nahĩĩ hai.

1st Student: kyaa kooii Taiksii hai?
2nd Student: hãã, kuch hãĩ. (or) nahĩĩ, kooii nahĩĩ hai.

G. Substitution drill: kisii

Ask someone.

kisii-see (puuchiyee).
kahiyee
bulaaiyee
bataaiyee
booliyee
madad kiijiyee
jawaab diijiyee
baat ciit kiijiyee

H. Chain drill: kisii

Instructor:	kisii-see puuchiyee.	Ask someone.
1st Student:	kis-see puuchũũ.	Who should I ask?
Instructor:	us aadmii-see puuchiyee.	Ask that man.

1st Student: kisii-koo bulaaiyee.
2nd Student: kis-koo bulaaũũ.
1st Student: apnee bairee-koo bulaaiyee.

I. Conversational response drill: kisii

Instructor	Class
Ask some local fruit seller.	See below.

yahãã-kee kisii phal-waalee-see puuchiyee.
yahãã-kee kisii rikšee-waalee-see puuchiyee.
wahãã-kee kisii dhoobii-see puuchiyee.
wahãã-kii kisii saaRii-koo k̤hariidiyee.
yahãã-kee kisii saamaan-koo lee caliyee.
wahãã-kii kisii k̤haas jagah-koo dikhaaiyee.
yahãã-kii kisii miThaaii-koo khaaiyee.
yahãã-kee kisii rikšee-mẽẽ baiThiyee.

Class

But there aren't any fruit sellers here.

yahãã too kooii phal-waalaa nahĩĩ hai.
yahãã too kooii rikšee-waalaa nahĩĩ hai.
wahãã too kooii dhoobii nahĩĩ hai.
wahãã too kooii saaRii nahĩĩ hai.
yahãã too kooii saamaan nahĩĩ hai.
wahãã too kooii k̤haas jagah nahĩĩ hai.
yahãã too kooii miThaaii nahĩĩ hai.
yahãã too kooii rikšaa nahĩĩ hai.

J. Substitution-agreement drill: kuch

Give me some of the local fresh fruit.

mujhee yahãã-kee kuch (taazee phal) diijiyee.
acchii miThaaii
taazii rooTii
ThanDee paanii
pakkee seebõõ
acchee khaanee

K. Additive drill: kuch aur

Instructor	Class
Aren't there any oranges?	Aren't there any more oranges?
kuch santree too nahĩĩ hãĩ?	kuch aur santree too nahĩĩ hãĩ?
kuch miThaaiyãã too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	miThaaiyãã hãĩ.
kuch rooTii too nahĩĩ hai.	rooTii hai.
kuch paanii too nahĩĩ hai.	paanii hai.
kuch kooT too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	kooT hãĩ.
kuch jaghẽẽ too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	jaghẽẽ hãĩ.
kuch rikšee too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	rikšee hãĩ.
kuch Taiksiyãã too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	Taiksiyãã hãĩ.
kuch bairee too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	bairee hãĩ.
kuch saamaan too nahĩĩ hai.	saamaan hai.
kuch kulii too nahĩĩ hãĩ.	kulii hãĩ.

Rapid Response

Group 1

kyaa wideešii rikšee-waalee-see baat kar rahee hãĩ?
wideešii-koo kahãã jaanaa hai.
kyaa wideešii-koo makaan-kaa nambar maaluum hai?
naii bastii kahãã hai.
kyaa makaan-kaa pataa lagaanaa aasaan hai?
kyaa wideešii naii bastii-mẽẽ pahlee bhii aaee hãĩ?
makaan-kaa nambar kyaa hai.
wideešii-koo kaun makaan dikhaataa hai.
kyaa makaan-par nambar likhaa hai?
sattaaiis nambar-kaa makaan kahãã hoogaa.

Group 2

kyaa wideešii sahaaranpur-mẽẽ hãĩ?
wideešii kis-see baat kar rahee hãĩ.
kyaa Taiksii Draaiwar-koo makaan-kaa nambar maaluum hai?
kyaa naii bastii sahaaranpur-mẽẽ hai?
wideešii makaan-kaa nambar kis-see puuchẽẽgee.
kyaa wideešii naii bastii-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ?
kyaa wideešii bii baTaa tiis nambar-kee makaan-mẽẽ jaaẽẽgee.
ee blaak kahãã hai.

Review Conversations

saRak-par

1. A: hãã saahab, kahãã calẽẽgee.
B: naii dillii calnaa hai, wahãã-kaa tumhaaraa kyaa reeT hai?
A: tiin rupaee hõõgee saahab, baiThiyee.
B: pahlee baazaar caloo, wahãã kuch kapRee ḳhariidnee hãĩ.
A: wahãã-see phir kahãã jaaẽẽgee, saahab.
B: wahãã-see phir thooRii deer ghuum-kar waapas aaẽẽgee.

2. A: bhaaii saahab, sTeešan kitnii duur hai.
B: kaafii duur hai, Taiksii—see jaaiyee.
A: Taiksii kahãã mileegii.
B: meeree saath aaiyee, mãĩ dikhaa deetaa hũũ.
A: aap-koo bahut dhanywaad, baRaa kašT diyaa.
B: kooii baat nahĩĩ, namastee.

3. A: bhaaii saahab, bii blaak kidhar hoogaa?
B: bii blaak too udhar hai, thooRii duur, magar aap kis-koo DhũũDh rahee hãĩ?
A: šarmaa jii-kee ghar jaanaa thaa· kyaa aap jaantee hãĩ un-koo?
B: kaun šarmaa jii. cããdnii cauk-waalee?
A: jii hãã, wahii.
B: acchaa, aaiyee meeree saath· mãĩ dikhaa deetaa hũũ un-kaa makaan.

baat ciit

4. A: warmaa jii, eek Taiksii bulaaiyee.
B: kahãã calnaa hai.
A: naii bastii calẽẽgee, šarmaa jii-kee ghar.
B: kyaa aap-koo makaan-kaa pataa maaluum hai?
A: hãã, makaan-kaa nambar maaluum hai, wahãã DhũũDh lẽẽgee.
B: acchaa, abhii Taiksii bulaataa hũũ.

5. A: šarmaa jii, kyaa aap-koo guptaa jii-kaa pataa maaluum hai.
B: kyõõ, kyaa baat hai?
A: zaraa un-kee ghar jaanaa thaa. kyaa aap calẽẽgee meeree saath?
B: kyaa aap aaj pahlii baar jaa rahee hãĩ.
A: hãã, pahlee kabhii nahĩĩ gayaa.
B: acchii baat hai, caltaa hũũ.

6. A: aap kal kahãã jaa rahee hãĩ.

B: dillii jaa rahaa hũũ, kuch kaam hai.

A: kyaa aagraa bhii rukẽẽgee?

B: nahĩĩ, aagraa too nahĩĩ, mãĩ mathuraa rukũũgaa, aur wahãã-see phir dillii jaaũũgaa.

A: mathuraa-mẽẽ bhii kuch kaam hai, kyaa?

B: hãã, kuch jaghẽẽ deekhnii hãĩ.

Unit III Part D

Situational Response

rikšee-waalee-see baat ciit

rikšee-waalee:

kyõõ saahab, kidhar calnaa hai aap-koo.
kyaa aap-koo Taiksii sTanD-par calnaa hai?
aap aagree-mẽẽ kahãã Thairẽẽgee.
kyaa aap-koo saaraa šahar deekhnaa hai?
kyaa aap-nee taaj mahal deekhaa hai?
aap-koo dillii-kaa ḳilaa zyaadaa pasand aayaa yaa aagree-kaa.
aap kis gaaRii-see dillii jaaẽẽgee.
aap-kee paas kitnaa saamaan hai.
kyaa aap hooTal-kaa naam jaantee hãĩ?
aap kab-tak aagraa rukẽẽgee.

rikšee-waalee-kee gaahak:

kyõõ bhaaii saahab, idhar kahĩĩ rikšaa mileegaa?
rikšee-waalee, kyaa rikšaa ḳhaalii hai?
kyaa caar ghanTee-mẽẽ ḳhaas jaghẽẽ dikhaa saktee hoo?
taaj mahal yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.
taaj mahal-see ḳilaa kitnii duur hai.
tumhaarii eek ghanTee-kii kitnii mazduurii hoogii.
aagree sTeešan-par kitnee pleeTfaarm hãĩ.
sahaaranpur sTeešan-par pleeTfaarm kis taraf hai.
tum-nee meeraa jhoolaa kahãã rakhaa hai.
kyaa aagree-mẽẽ moocii mileegaa?

kulii-see baat ciit

kulii:

aap-koo kis gaaRii-see jaanaa hai.
aap kis-koo DhũũDh rahee hãĩ, saahab.
kyaa aap naii bastii-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?
kyaa aap-kaa saamaan bhaarii hai?
kyaa aap-koo ThanDaa paanii piinaa hai?
kyaa yee kaalaa bakas aap-kaa hai?
saahab, bistar aur bakas kahãã lee calũũ.
aap-kee paas kis klaas-kaa TikaT hai.

aap sahaaranpur-see kab waapas aaẽẽgee.
saahab, kyaa aap-kii sab ciizẽẽ Thiik hãĩ?
kyaa aap-kee paas TikaT hai?

kulii-kee gaahak:

ai kulii, kyaa gaaRii-see saamaan nikaaloogee?
tumhaaraa nambar kyaa hai.
sahaaranpur-kee liyee gaaRii kis pleeTfaarm-see jaatii hai.
kyaa gaaRii aaj leeT hai?
sahaaranpur kaisaa šahar hai.
kyaa duun ekspres-mẽẽ jagah mil jaaeegii?
kyaa duun ekspres-mẽẽ farsT klaas hootii hai?
tumhaarii mazduurii kyaa hoogii.
kyaa laal ḳilaa dillii sTeešan-kee paas hai?
kyaa sahaaranpur sTeešan-kee baahar rikšee mil jaaẽẽgee?
kyõõ bhaaii, kyaa bistar aur bakas uupar uupar hãĩ?

Taiksii Draaiwar-see baat ciit

Taiksii Draaiwar:

aap naii dillii kab aaee, saahab.
aap-koo dillii-mẽẽ kahãã ghuumnaa hai.
aap-koo sahar-mẽẽ kahãã lee calũũ.
kyaa aap-koo saRak-kaa naam maaluum hai?
kyaa aap saamnee-waalee hooTal-mẽẽ jaanaa pasand karẽẽgee?
kyaa aap dillii pahlii baar aaee hãĩ?
aap saamaan apnee paas rakhẽẽgee yaa Taiksii-kee piichee.
kyaa aap dillii-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantee hãĩ?
kyaa aap duun ekspres-see dillii aaee hãĩ?
amriikaa-mẽẽ Taiksii-kaa kyaa reeT hai, saahab.

Taiksii Draaiwar-kee gaahak:

kyaa tum swis hooTal-kaa pataa lagaa saktee hoo?
kyaa swis hooTal yahãã-see bahut duur hai?
kyõõ bhaaii, makaan-par kaun-saa nambar likhaa hai.
kyaa cããdnii cauk puraanii dillii-kee andar hai?
kyaa saamaan Taiksii-kee piichee rakhaa hai?
puraanaa ḳilaa yahãã-see kitnii duur hoogaa.
kyaa hooTal yahãã-see nazdiik hai?
is saRak-kaa kyaa naam hai, bhaaii.
dillii-mẽẽ Taiksii-kaa reeT kyaa zyaadaa hai?

Review Conversations

rikšaa bulaanaa

1. A: kahiyee saahab, kidhar calnaa hai.
B: taaj mahal-kii taraf. taaj mahal jaanee-kaa kyaa reeT hai.
A: taaj mahal-kaa reeT eek rupayaa hai.
B: nahĩĩ, baarah aanee dẽẽgee, aur too nahĩĩ dee saktee.
A: acchaa saahab, baiThiyee.

2. A: sunoo bhaaii, kyaa tum šahar dikhaa sakoogee?
B: zaruur saahab, šaam-tak saaraa šahar dikhaaũũgaa.
A: mujhee doo bajee-kii gaaRii-see jaanaa hai.
B: acchaa, too sirf ḳhaas imaartẽẽ dikhaaũũgaa.

3. A: acchaa saahab, kahãã-see šuruu karẽẽgee.
B: sTeešan-see šuruu karẽẽgee.
A: acchaa, too pahlee taaj mahal deekhẽẽgee aur phir ḳilaa.
B: Thiik hai, leekin doo bajee-tak waapas jaanaa caahiyee.
A: Thiik hai.

saRak-par

4. A: suniyee saahab, naii saRak kahãã hoogii.
B: naii saRak too bilkul aagee hai. aap kaun-saa nambar caahtee hãĩ.
A: biis nambar-kaa makaan.
B: woo too blaak-kee biic-mẽẽ hoogaa.

5. A: kahiyee saahab, kyaa aap yahãã-kee hãĩ?
B: aap-koo too hindii bahut aatii hai. kyaa aap wideešii hãĩ?
A: nahĩĩ, mãĩ too abhii hindii paRh rahaa hũũ.
B: too kyaa karũũ aap-kee liyee?
A: bataaiyee, laal ḳilaa kahãã hoogaa.
B: laal ḳilaa too puraanii dillii-mẽẽ hai. bas-see jaaiyee.

6. A: kahiyee saahab, aap-koo kyaa caahiyee?
B: yee jhoolaa bahut bhaarii hai. kyaa rikšaa mileegaa?
A: agar aap-koo zaruurat hoo, too rikšee-waalee-koo bulaaũũ.
B: bahut meharbaanii.
A: ee rikšee-waalee, idhar aanaa. saahab-kaa bakas uThaanaa.

doostõõ-see baat ciit

7. A: suniyee paal saahab, kal aap kyaa karẽẽgee.
B: aagraa jaaũũgaa.
A: too aagree-mẽẽ kyaa deekhẽẽgee.
B: taaj mahal too zaruur deekhnaa hai.
A: aur aagree-kaa ḳilaa?
B: is-koo bhii deekhnaa hai.

8. A: kahiyee singh saahab, kal mujhee sahaaranpur jaanaa hai. kyaa aap meeree saath aa saktee hãĩ?
B: kis gaaRii-see jaaẽẽgee.
A: aaTh bajee-kii baaRii-see.
B: aaTh bajee bahut deer hoogii. saat bajee-kii gaaRii-see calẽẽ.
A: bahut acchaa.

9. A: bataaiyee šarmaa jii, yahãã kaun-sii ḳhaas imaartẽẽ hãĩ.
B: laal ḳilaa hai, aur naii dillii mẽẽ bahut sundar makaan hãĩ.
A: acchaa, too laal ḳilee-koo calẽẽ.
B: laal ḳilaa too aaj band hai. kal khulaa hoogaa.
A: acchaa too kal calẽẽ.

Unit IV Part A

Conversation

1 tããgee-par sair.
2 jaipur, raajasthaan-kii raajdhaanii.

3 wideešii: kyõõ bhaaii tããgee-waalee, kyaa yahii puraanaa baazaar hai?
4 tããgee-waalaa: nahĩĩ, yee too naee Dhang-kii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ. kuch din huee banii hãĩ.
5 wideešii: yee imaartẽẽ too kaafii puraanii lagtii hãĩ.
6 tããgee-waalaa: nahĩĩ, yee saaraa hissaa nayaa banaa hai.
7 wideešii: woo kis ḳism-kee bartanõõ-kii dukaan hai.
8 tããgee-waalaa: wahãã piital-kee bartan biktee hãĩ.
9 kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ aisee bartan nahĩĩ hootee?
10 wideešii: nahĩĩ, is ḳism-kee bartan mãĩ-nee kabhii nahĩĩ deekhee.

11 tããgee-waalaa: ab, yahãã-see puraanaa baazaar šuruu hootaa hai.
12 wideešii: yee loog,saRak-kee kinaaree kapRaa kyõõ beec rahee hãĩ.
13 tããgee-waalaa: kyõõ-ki jagah-kii kamii hai, is liyee dukaanẽẽ raastee-par lagaaĩ hãĩ.
14 wideešii: yahãã kyaa hoo rahaa hai.
15 tããgee-waalaa: yee loog gããw-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ. rooz apnii sabzii beecnee aatee hãĩ.
16 in-kee paas har rooz taazii sabzii hootii hai.

17 wideešii: yee too kooii mahal saa dikhtaa hai. is-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ. is-kaa naam bhuul gayaa.
18 tããgee-waalaa: is-koo hawaa mahal kahtee hãĩ. is-mẽẽ raaniyãã rahtii thĩĩ.
19 leekin ab too ḳhaalii paRaa hai.

20 wideešii: woo safeed pagRii-waalaa aadmii beepaRhaa hoogaa, kyõõ na?
21 tããgee-waalaa: jii hãã. isii liyee too woo dublaa patlaa aadmii us-kii ciTThii likh rahaa hai.
22 wideešii: acchaa sunoo, ab lauTnaa paReegaa mujhee gaaRii pakaRnii hai.
23 tããgee-waalaa: jaipur aap-koo kaisaa lagaa.
24 wideešii: bahut acchaa lagaa.

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

	tããgaa	tonga
	sair	sightseeing trip (f)
1	tããgee-par sair.	Sightseeing in a tonga.
	jaipur	Jaipur (m)
	raajasthaan	Rajasthan (m)
	raajdhaanii	capital
2	jaipur, raajasthaan-kii raajdhaanii.	Jaipur, the capital of Rajasthan.
	tããgee-waalaa	tonga-driver
	tããgee-waalee	Oh, tonga-driver!
3 W:	kyõõ bhaaii tããgee-waalee, kyaa yahii puraanaa baazaar hai?	Say, tonga-driver! Is this the old market?
	Dhang	style (m)
	naee Dhang-kii dukaan	new-style shop
	din	day (m)
	huaa	passed, ago (adj)
	kuch din huee	some days ago
	bannaa	to be made
	banaa	made
4 T:	nahĩĩ, yee too naee Dhang-kii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ. kuch din huee banii hãĩ.	No, these are all new-style shops. They were built a short time ago.
	imaarat	building (f)
	kaafii	enough, quite (adj)
5 W:	yee imaartẽẽ too kaafii puraanii lagtii hãĩ.	But these buildings seem to be quite old.
	hissaa	part
6 T:	nahĩĩ, yee saaraa hissaa nayaa banaa hai.	No, this whole section is recently built.
	ḳism	kind (f)
	bartan	container, vessel (m)
	kis ḳism-kaa	what kind of
7 W:	woo kis ḳism-kee bartanõõ-kii dukaan hai.	What kind of containers does that shop sell?

	piital	brass (m)
	biknaa	to be sold
	deeš	country (m)
8 T:	wahãã piital-kee bartan biktee hãĩ.	Brass containers are sold there.
9 T:	kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ aisee bartan nahĩĩ hootee?	Don't you have such containers in your country?
	kabhii	sometimes
	kabhii nahĩĩ	never
	is ḳism-kaa	this kind of
10 W:	nahĩĩ, is ḳism-kee bartan mãĩ-nee kabhii nahĩĩ deekhee.	No, I've never seen this kind of container before.
	šuruu hoonaa	to be started
11 T:	ab, yahãã-see puraanaa baazaar šuruu hootaa hai.	Now, the old market starts from here.
	kinaaraa	edge, shore (m)
	-kee kinaaree	at the edge of
12 W:	yee loog saRak-kee kinaaree kapRaa kyõõ beec rahee hãĩ.	Why are these people selling cloth by the side of the road?
	kyõõ-ki	because
	kam	few
	kamii	shortage
	is liyee	therefore
	raastaa	path, road
	lagaanaa	to apply, install
	lagaayaa	is set up
13 T:	kyõõ-ki jagah-kii kamii hai, is liyee dukaanẽẽ raastee-par lagaaii hãĩ.	There's a shortage of space. That's why the stands are set up next to the road.
	hoo rahaa hai	is going on
14 W:	yahãã kyaa hoo rahaa hai.	What's going on here?
	gããw	village (m)
	rahnee-waalaa	inhabitant
	rooz	daily (adv)
	sabzii	vegetable
	beecnee aatee hãĩ	they come in order to sell
15 T:	yee loog gããw-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ. rooz apnii sabzii beecnee aatee hãĩ.	They're villagers. They come daily to sell their vegetables.
	har	every (adj)
	har rooz	every day (adv)
16 T:	in-kee paas har rooz taazii sabzii hootii hai.	They have fresh vegetables every day.

saa	-ish, like (part)
kooii mahal-saa	like some palace
dikhnaa	to appear, seem
bhuulnaa	to forget
bhuul jaanaa	to forget (altogether)
17 W: yee too kooii mahal saa dikhtaa hai. is-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ. naam bhuul gayaa.	This looks like a palace. What do they call it? I've forgotten the name.
hawaa	air, wind (f)
raanii	queen
18 T: is-koo hawaa mahal kahtee hãĩ. is-mẽẽ raaniyãã rahtii thĩĩ.	They call it the Palance of the Winds. The ranis used to live in it.
ḵhaalii	empty (adj)
paRnaa	to fall, lie
ḵhaalii paRaa	lie vacant
19 T: leekin ab too ḵhaalii paRaa hai.	But now it's vacant.
pagRii	turban
pagRii-waalaa	turban-wearer
beepaRhaa	illiterate (adj)
kyõõ na?	no?
20 W: woo safeed pagRii-waalaa aadmii beepaRhaa hoogaa, kyõõ na?	That man in the white turban probably is illiterate, isn't he?
isii liyee	for just that reason
dublaa	lean, thin (people)
patlaa	thin (object)
duplaa patlaa	lean and thin (person)
ciTThii	letter
21 T: jii hãã. isii liyee too woo dublaa patlaa aadmii us-kii ciTThii likh rahaa hai.	Yes, ma'am, that's why the thin man is writing the letter for him.
lauTnaa	to go back
pakaRnaa	to catch
22 W: acchaa sunoo, ab lauTnaa paReegaa, mujhee gaaRii pakaRnii hai.	Say, I'll have to go back now. I have to catch a train.
lagaa	struck, affected
23 T: jaipur aap-koo kaisaa lagaa.	How did Jaipur strike you?
24 W: bahut acchaa lagaa.	I liked it quite a bit.

Cultural Notes

Jaipur, capital of the state of Rajasthan and former capital of the princely state of Jaipur, is located about 150 miles southwest of Delhi and 100 miles west of Agra. This picturesque city, a favorite tourist resort, preserves the characteristic red sandstone construction and turreted architecture of the eighteenth century, when almost every hilltop in Rajasthan was crowned with a fort and the whole area was an armed camp. The construction of modern buildings is planned to harmonize with the old. The complex of buildings making up the Maharaja's palace, including the famous Hawa Mahal, and the Amber Palace, 15 miles out of town, are all well-known tourist sights. A famous figure of Jaipur history is Maharaja Jai Singh, an eighteenth century ruler and builder of the famous astronomical observatories of Delhi and Jaipur.

The Jaipur bazaar is renowned for its brass products. Both Hindu and Moslem workmen may be seem hammering brass trays and incising trays and vessels with intricate designs. The narrow lanes and dark shops of the bazaar are overflowing with people. Villagers in Rajasthan are known by the distinctive skirt (lãhgaa) of the women, who do not wear saris, and the men's turban (pagRii). The street-corner scribe, reading out and writing letters for villagers who cannot do so for themselves, is still a common sight here. Outside the bazaar shops, fruit and vegetable sellers spread their wares along the sides of the lanes, crowding the passers-by even more closely together.

Despite the traditional aspect of its capital city, Rajasthan is the center of a successful and active community development program under the enthusiastic direction of state officials.

Word Study

1. Numbers 30-40

ikattiis	31	chattiis	36
battiis	32	sãĩtiis	37
tẽẽtiis	33	aRtiis	38
cãũtiis	34	untaaliis	39
pãĩtiis	35	(uncaaliis)	39
		caaliis	40

2. Terms for foods

rooTii	bread, food	
sabzii	vegetables	
goošt	meat	(m)
caawal	rice	(m)
duudh	milk	(m)

in-kee paas rooz taazii sabzii hootii hãĩ.
in-kee paas rooz taazaa goošt hootaa hai.
in-kee paas rooz taazaa caawal hootaa hai.
in-kee paas rooz taazaa duudh hootaa hai.

3. Terms for clothing

pagRii	turban
Toopii	hat
pahennaa	to wear

pagRii-waalaa
Toopii-waalaa

woo pagRii pahentaa hai.
woo Toopii pahentaa hai.

4. Related word pairs

beepaRhaa	illiterate	lambaa	long, tall
paRhaa likhaa	literate	chooTaa	short
dublaa	thin (people	patlaa	thin (objects)
mooTaa	fat	mooTaa	thick
acchaa	good	ḳhaalii	empty
buraa	bad	bharaa	full
šuruu hoonaa	to begin	bhuulnaa	to forget
ḳhatam hoonaa	to end	yaad karnaa	to remember

woo aadmii bapaRhaa hoogaa.
woo aadmii paRhaa likhaa hoogaa.

woo dublaa aadmii likh rahaa hai.
woo mooTaa aadmii likh rahaa hai.

woo acchaa lagtaa hai.
woo buraa lagtaa hai.

yahãã-see baazaar šuruu hootaa hai.
yahãã baazaar ḳhatam hootaa hai.

woo aadmii lambaa hai.
woo aadmii chooTaa hai.

yee kitaab patlii hai.
yee kitaab mooTii hai.

yee bakas ḳhaalii hai.
yee bakas bharaa hai.

naam bhuul gayaa.
naam yaad kartaa hũũ.

Grammar drills

1. Pattern expansion

1.1 Pattern 1

A. Expansion drill

The procedure for the expansion drills that will be used in the grammar sections of Unit IV is the same as that used so far with expansion drills in the pronunciation sections of Units I-III. The difference between them is that the grammar expansion drills will have several sets of expansions for the same basic sentence.

Frame: Is this the market here?

Jaipur	Is this the Jaipur market here?
old	Is this the old Jaipur market here?

Frame: kyaa yahii baazaar hai?

jaipur-kaa	kyaa yahii jaipur-kaa baazaar hai?
puraanaa	kyaa yahii jaipur-kaa puraanaa baazaar hai?

aagree-kaa
nayaa

is bastii-kaa
baRaa

Frame: nahĩĩ, yee too dukaanẽẽ hãĩ.

naii	nahĩĩ, yee too naii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ.
sab	nahĩĩ, yee too sab naii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ.

puraanii
is bastii-kii

chooTii
gããw-waalõõ-kii

B. Chain drill

Use questions and answers of the type given in Drill A.

wideešii:	kyaa yee sab naii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ?	Are these all new shops?
tããgee-waalaa:	nahĩĩ, kuch puraanii hãĩ.	No, some are old.
wideešii:	kyaa yee bastii-kaa baRaa baazaar hai?	
tããgee-waalaa:	nahĩĩ, yahãã sirf chooTee baazaar hãĩ.	

1.2 Pattern 2

A. Substitution drill

These buildings seem to be quite old.

yee imaartẽẽ kaafii (puraanii) lagtii hãĩ.
naii
ḳhaalii
baRii
chooTii

B. Substitution-agreement drill

What do you think of the Palace of the Winds?

(hawaa mahal) aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.
yee imaartẽẽ
jaipur-kii saRkẽẽ
aagree-kaa ḳilaa
woo rikšee
hamaaraa deeš
baazaar-kii dukaanẽẽ
cããdnii cauk

C. Double substitution-agreement drill

These stores seem to be quite new.

yee (dukaanẽẽ) hamẽẽ too kaafii (naii) lagtii hãĩ.
saRak
lambii
rikšaa
baRaa
tããgee
halkee

D. Chain drill

hindustaanii: What do you think of the Palace of the Winds?
wideešii: It seems to be quite empty.

hindustaanii: hawaa mahal aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.
wideešii: woo too kaafii ḳhaalii lagtaa hai.

hindustaanii: jaipur aap-koo kaisaa lagtaa hai.
wideešii: woo too kaafii baRaa lagtaa hai.

1.3 Pattern 3

A. Substitution drill

What is this palace called?

is (mahal)-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ.
šahar
baazaar
bastii
sTeešan
hooTal
saRak

B. Substitution drill

It's called the Palace of the Winds.

is-koo (hawaa mahal) kahtee hãĩ.
dillii-kaa sTeešan
naii bastii
aagraa šahar
sahaaranpur
naii saRak
swis hooTal

C. Chain drill

wideešii:	is šahar-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ.	What is this city called?
tããgee-waalaa:	is-koo jaipur kahtee hãĩ.	It's called Jaipur

wideešii:	is hooTal-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ.
tããgee-waalaa:	is-koo ašookaa hooTal kahtee hãĩ.

1.4 Pattern 4

A. Individual expansion drill

Frame: That man is probably illiterate, isn't he?

turban wearer	That man wearing a turban is probably illiterate, isn't he?
white	That man wearing a white turban is probably illiterate, isn't he?

Frame: woo aadmii beepaRhaa hoogaa, kyõõ na?

pagRii-waalaa	woo pagRii-waalaa aadmii beepaRhaa hoogaa, kyõõ na?
safeed	woo safeed pagRii-waalaa aadmii beepaRhaa hoogaa, kyõõ na?

dhootii-waalaa
laal

kurtee-waalaa
piilee

Toopii-waalaa
kaalii

chappal-waalaa
naii

B. Chain drill

wideešii:	woo aadmii beepaRhaa hoogaa.	That man must be illiterate.
tããgee-waalaa:	kaun saa aadmii.	Which man?
wideešii:	woo safeed dhootii-waalaa.	The man in the white dhoti.

wideešii: woo aurat madraasii hoogii.
tããgee-waalaa: kaun sii aurat.
wideešii: woo laal saaRii-waalii.

1.5 Pattern 5

A. Substitution drill

There's a shortage of space in this market.

is baazaar-mẽẽ (jagah)-kii kamii hai.
dukaanõõ
phalõõ
sabziyõõ
bartanõõ
piital
kapRõõ
saamaan
rooTiyõõ

B. Chain drill

Foreigner: What is there a shortage of in this market?
Indian: There's a shortage of fruits.

wideešii: is baazaar-mẽẽ kis ciiz-kii kamii hai.
hindustaanii: phalõõ-kii kamii hai.

wideešii: is baazaar-mẽẽ kis ciiz-kii kamii hai.
hindustaanii: bartanõõ-kii kamii hai.

1.6 Pattern 6

A. Substitution-agreement drill

What kind of a store is that?

woo kis ḳism-kii (dukaan) hai.
dukaanẽẽ
juutaa
juutee
saamaan
piital
sabziyãã
kurtaa
miThaaii
kapRee

B. Chain drill

Use only dukaan and dukaanẽẽ in the question.

wideešii: woo kis ḳism-kii dukaan hai. What kind of store is that?
doost: wahãã piital-kee bartan biktee hãĩ. Brass containers are sold there.

wideešii: yee kis ḳism-kii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ.
doost: yahãã kapRee biktee hãĩ.

C. Substitution-agreement drill

What kind of containers does that shop sell?

woo kis ḳism-kee (bartanõõ)-kii dukaan hai.
phal
phalõõ
miThaaii
miThaaiyõõ
kapRõõ
kapRee
saaRiyõõ

D. Substitution-agreement drill

Don't such containers exist in your country?

kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ aisee (bartan) nahĩĩ hootee?
piital
chapplẽẽ
miThaaii
tããgee
imaartẽẽ
kurtee
rooTii

E. Substitution-agreement drill

Use the substitutions in Drill D.

Containers like this don't exist in our country.

hamaaree deeš-mẽẽ is ḳism-kee (bartan) nahĩĩ hootee.

F. Chain drill

Indian: Don't such containers exist in your country?
Foreigner: No, containers like this don't exist.

hindustaanii: kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ aisee bartan nahĩĩ hootee?
wideešii: nahĩĩ, is ḳism-kee bartan nahĩĩ hootee.

hindustaanii: kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ aisii dukaanẽẽ nahĩĩ hootii?
wideešii: nahĩĩ, is ḳism-kii dukaanẽẽ nahĩĩ hootii.

2. Transitive and intransitive verbs

All Hindi verbs fall into two major categories, transitive and intransitive. Transitive verbs are those that can take a direct object, e.g., mãĩ paisaa deetaa hũũ. 'I give money,' where paisaa 'money' is the direct object. Intransitive verbs cannot take a direct object, e.g., mãĩ jaataa hũũ 'I go.' Although the above distinction also exists in English, the number of intransitive verbs in Hindi is much larger than in English.

Hindi intransitive verbs fall into two subgroups. The first consists of verbs such as jaanaa 'go,' baiThnaa 'sit,' Thairnaa 'wait,' rahnaa 'stay,' milnaa 'be received, available' which by and large tend to be intransitive both in Hindi and English.

The second group includes forms such as biknaa 'to be sold' or 'to get sold,' bannaa 'to be made' or 'to get made' all of which have transitive counterparts which are similar in form. Here is a list of verbs covered so far which fall into this category, along with their transitive counterparts.

bannaa	be made	banaanaa	make, build
biknaa	be sold	beecnaa	sell
khulnaa	be opened	khoolnaa	open
ruknaa	be stopped	rooknaa	stop
nikalnaa	to be removed	nikaalnaa	to remove
lagnaa	be affected	lagaanaa	make appear, apply install
bacnaa	be saved	bacaanaa	save
sãbhalnaa	be careful, be controlled	sãbhaalnaa	take care
calnaa	be in motion	calaanaa	drive

The distinction between the above pairs is somewhat difficult to show by the English translation. Note the following examples:

kyaa khiRkii khultii hai?	Does this window open?
kyaa khiRkii khooltii hai?	Does she open the window?
gaaRii yahãã ruktii hai.	The train stops here.
gaaRii yahãã rooktii hai.	She stops the train here.
kapRaa yahãã bantaa hai.	The cloth is made here.
kapRaa yahãã banaataa hai.	He makes the cloth here.

All of the causative verbs listed in IIIB word study, such as khoolnaa, dhulaanaa, bulaanaa, etc., are transitive. Simple non-causative verbs, however, may be either transitive or intransitive. For example, dhoonaa, boolnaa are transitive, while ruknaa, calnaa and nikalnaa are intransitive.

Note that with khulnaa and other intransitives in the same group, the grammatical subject is the thing that undergoes the action. Nouns or pronouns designating the actor are followed by the postposition -see, which in this context means 'by.' These constructions usually also connote capacity to do something.

kapRaa dukaan-waalee-see biktaa hai.	The cloth is sold by the shopkeeper. (or) The cloth can be sold by the shopkeeper.

A. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
Those people are selling containers.	Containers are being sold.
woo loog bartan beec rahee hãĩ.	bartan bik rahee hãĩ.
woo loog jhoolee khool rahee hãĩ.	jhoolee khul
woo loog bakas nikaal rahee hãĩ.	bakas nikal
woo loog bistar lagaa rahee hãĩ.	bistar lag
woo loog rikšee rook rahee hãĩ.	rikšee ruk
woo loog tããgee calaa rahee hãĩ.	tããgee cal
woo loog ghar sãbhaal rahee hãĩ.	ghar sãbhal
woo loog paisee bacaa rahee hãĩ.	paisee bac
woo loog peeRee banaa rahee hãĩ.	peeRee ban

B. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
Those people sell containers.	Containers are sold.
woo loog bartan beectee hãĩ.	bartan biktee hãĩ.
woo loog miThaaii beectee hãĩ.	miThaaii biktii hai.
woo loog piital beectee hãĩ.	piital biktii hai.
woo loog Toopiyãã beectee hãĩ.	Toopiyãã biktii hãĩ.
woo loog keelee beectee hãĩ.	keelee biktee hãĩ.
woo loog saamaan beectee hãĩ.	saamaan biktaa hai.
woo loog sabzii beectee hãĩ.	sabzii biktii hai.
woo loog peeRee beectee hãĩ.	peeRee biktee hãĩ.
woo loog khaanaa beectee hãĩ.	khaanaa biktaa hai.
woo loog pagRiyãã beectee hãĩ.	pagRiyãã biktii hãĩ.
woo loog kurtee beectee hãĩ.	kurtee biktee hãĩ.

C. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
The traveler closes the window.	The window is closed.
yaatrii khiRkii khooltaa hai.	khiRkii khultii hai.
meem saahab khaanaa banaatii hãĩ.	khaanaa bantaa hai.
kulii ciizẽẽ nikaaltaa hai.	ciizẽẽ nikaltii hãĩ.
dukaandaar dukaan udhar lagaataa hai.	dukaan udhar lagtii hai.
laRkii bhaaii-koo sãbhaaltii hai.	bhaaii sãbhaltaa hai.
singh saahab jhoolee nikaaltee hãĩ.	jhoolee nikaltee hãĩ.
miThaaii-waalaa miThaaiyãã beectaa hai.	miThaaiyãã biktii hãĩ.
widyaarthii darwaazee khooltee hãĩ.	darwaazee khultee hãĩ.
sab amiir loog paisaa bacaatee hãĩ.	paisaa bactaa hai.
woo loog piital-kee bartan beectee hãĩ.	piital-kee bartan biktee hãĩ.
yee aadmii gaaRii calaataa hai.	gaaRii caltii hai.
kulii saamaan nikaaltee hãĩ.	saamaan nikaltaa hai.
miThaaii-waalaa miThaaiyãã banaataa hai.	miThaaiyãã banaatii hãĩ.
Tiicar meez yahãã lagaatee hãĩ.	meez yahãã lagtii hai.
woo aurtẽẽ sabzii beectii hãĩ.	sabzii biktii hai.
ham us laRkee-koo sãbhaaltee hãĩ.	woo laRkaa sãbhaltaa hai.

D. Individual transformation drill

Use any appropriate subject.

Instructor: khiRkii khultii hai. The window is open.
1st Student: mãĩ khiRkii khooltaa hũũ. I open the window.

Instructor: khaanaa bantaa hai.
2nd Student: gããw-waalii khaanaa banaatii hai.

Instructor: Continue with the sentences in Drill C under Class.

E. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
The traveler closes the window.	See below.

yaatrii khiRkii khooltaa hai.
meem saahab khaanaa banaatii hãĩ.
kulii ciizẽẽ nikaaltaa hai.
dukaandaar dukaan udhar lagaataa hai.
laRkii bhaaii-koo sãbhaaltii hai.
singh saahab jhoolee nikaaltee hãĩ.
miThaaii-waalaa miThaaiyãã beectaa hai.
sab amiir loog paisaa bacaatee hãĩ.
woo loog piital-kee bartan beectee hãĩ.
yee aadmii gaaRii calaataa hai.
kulii saamaan nikaaltee hãĩ.
miThaaii-waalaa miThaaiyãã banaataa hai.
Tiicar meez yahãã lagaatee hãĩ.
woo aurtẽẽ sabzii beectii hãĩ.
ham us laRkee-koo sãbhaaltee hãĩ.

Class

The window is closed by the traveler.

khiRkii yaatrii-see khultii hai.
khaanaa meem saahab-see bantaa hai.
ciizẽẽ kulii-see nikaltii hãĩ.
dukaan dukaandaar-see udhar lagtii hai.
bhaaii laRkii-see sãbhaltaa hai.
jhoolee singh saahab-see nikaltee hãĩ.
miThaaiyãã miThaaii-waalee-see biktii hãĩ.
paisaa sab amiir loogõõ-see bactaa hai.
piital-kee bartan un loogõõ-see biktee hãĩ.
gaaRii us aadmii-see caltii hai.
saamaan kuliyõõ-see nikaltaa hai.
miThaaiyãã miThaaii-waalee-see bantii hãĩ.
meez Tiicrõõ-see yahãã lagtii hai.
sabzii un gããw-waaliyõõ-see biktii hai.
woo laRkee ham-see sãbhaltee hai.

F. Transformation drill

Substitute kyaa for the subjects of intransitive verbs and kaun for the subjects of transitive verbs.

Instructor	Class
Brass is sold in the old market.	See below.

puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ piital biktii hai.
saRak-kee kinaaree loog sabzii beectee hãĩ.
jaipur-mẽẽ piital-kee bartan miltee hãĩ.
udhar raastee-mẽẽ mooTar ruktii hai.
yee bakas kulii nahĩĩ khooltaa hai.
yee makaan bahut baRaa lagtaa hai.
woo laRkaa doost-kaa makaan DhũũDhtaa hai.
is baazaar-mẽẽ taazii sabzii miltii hai.
yee jhoolee nahĩĩ khultee hãĩ.
woo aadmii dukaanẽẽ saRak-par lagaatee hãĩ.

Class

What is sold in the old market?

puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ kyaa biktaa hai.
saRak-kee kinaaree kaun sabzii beectee hãĩ.
jaipur-mẽẽ kyaa miltee hãĩ.
udhar raastee-mẽẽ kyaa ruktii hai.
yee bakas kaun nahĩĩ khooltaa hai.
kyaa bahut baRaa lagtaa hai.
kaun doost-kaa makaan DhũũDhtaa hai.
is baazaar-mẽẽ kyaa miltii hai.
kyaa nahĩĩ khultee hãĩ.
dukaanẽẽ saRak-par kaun lagaatee hãĩ.

G. Transformation drill

Repeat Drill F using *kyaa ciiz* for *kyaa*, and *kaun* or *kaun loog* for *kaun*, the latter depending on whether the subject is singular or plural.

Class

puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ kyaa ciiz biktii hai.
saRak-kee kinaaree kaun loog sabzii beectee hãĩ.

H. Chain drill

Using a transitive or intransitive verb, ask a *kyaa*-type question or *kaun*-type question.

Instructor: What is sold in Indian markets?
1st Student: All kinds of things are sold.

Instructor: hindustaan-kee baazaar-mẽẽ kyaa biktee hãĩ.
1st Student: sab kuch biktaa hai.

Instructor: saRkõõ-kee kinaaree kaun loog sabzii beectee hãĩ.
2nd Student: gããw-kee rahnee-waalee beectee hãĩ.

3. The past of intransitive verbs

The past tense of intransitive verbs is expressed by the -*aa* participle constructions in which the participle agrees in number and gender with the subject.

jaipur aap-koo kaisaa *lagaa*.
naii bastii *aa gaii*.
kitnii mazduurii *huii*.
aap *samjhee*?

The meaning of the above constructions is similar to that of the English past in "I went" 'lived,' etc. It thus contrasts with the -*taa* participle plus *thaa* constructions which correspond to the English 'used to.'

is-mẽẽ raaniyãã *rahtii thĩĩ*.	The ranis used to live in it.
is-mẽẽ raaniyãã *rahĩĩ*.	The ranis lived in it.

The -*aa* participles of *jaanaa* 'to go' and *hoonaa* 'to become' are irregular and are given below with their masculine and feminine singular and plural case endings:

hoogaa	jaanaa
huaa	gayaa
huee	gaee
huii	gaii
huĩĩ	gaĩĩ

Past tense -aa participle constructions may or may not be followed by hai. The hai forms add a connotation of completeness in the present.

woo ghar gayaa.	He went home (he could still be on his way).
woo ghar gayaa hai.	He went home (and he has probably arrived there now).

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
When will the washerman come?	He came this morning.
dhoobii kab aaeegaa.	saweeree hii aayaa.
kapRaa kab mileegaa.	milaa.
yaatrii kab jaaeegaa.	gayaa.
kurtaa kab bikeegaa.	bikaa.
phaaTak kab khuleegaa.	khulaa.
saamaan kab nikaleegaa.	nikalaa.
khaanaa kab baneegaa.	banaa.
kaam kab rukeegaa.	rukaa.
wideešii kab Thaireegaa.	Thairaa.
kaam kab šuruu hoogaa.	huaa.

B. Substitution-agreement drill

How did Jaipur strike you?

(jaipur) aap-koo kaisaa lagaa.
raajasthaan
piital-kee bartan
raajdhaanii
yahãã-kii sabzii
tããgee-par sair
hamaaraa gããw
hawaa mahal

C. Substitution-agreement drill

Where was the water taken from?

(paanii) kahãã-see nikalaa.
yee doo bakas
jhoolaa
saRii
Toopiyãã
meeraa bistar
khurcan
saamaan

D. Substitution-agreement drill

Where did the lady go yesterday.

kal (meem saahab) kahãã gaĩĩ.
saahab
bairaa
woo laRkii
tããgee-waalee
aap-kaa dhoobii
šahar-waaliyãã
hindii kii-widyaarthii

E. Substitution-agreement drill

Why were you so late?

itnii (deer) kyõõ huii.
paisaa
dhulaaii
rupaee
mazduurii
kaam

F. Substitution-agreement drill

How much is it?

kitnaa (paisaa) huaa.
mazduurii
rupaee
dhulaaii

G. Double substitution-agreement drill

Did you bring all our clothes?

kyaa (tum) hamaaree sab (kapRee) lee aaee?
bairaa
saamaan
pagRii-waalaa
ciizẽẽ
gããw-waalii
sabzii
gããw-waaliyãã
keelee

H. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
When will the train come?	It came at 10 o'clock.
gaaRii kab aaeegii.	das bajee aaii.
kapRaa kab mileegaa.	milaa.
banaarsii saaRiyãã kab bikẽẽgii.	bikĩĩ.
saahab aagree-see kab lauTẽẽgee.	lauTee.
hindii-kaa klaas kab khuleegaa.	khulaa.
woo laRkiyãã yahãã-see kab calẽẽgii.	calĩĩ..
wideešii taaj mahal kab jaaẽẽgee.	gaee.
dukaanẽẽ is saRak-par kab lagẽẽgii.	lagĩĩ.
moocii-kaa kaam kab šuruu hoogaa.	huaa.
tumhaarii doost idhar kab Thaireegii.	Thairii.
meeree kurtee kab banẽẽgee.	banee.
aap-kee klaas kab šuruu hõõgee.	huee.

I. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
When will you get some money?	I just got it yesterday.
aap-koo paisaa kab mileegaa.	mujhee kal hii milaa.
dhoobii-koo dhulaaii kab mileegii.	us-koo milii.
šahar-waalõõ-koo sabziyãã kab milẽẽgii.	un-koo milĩĩ.
gaahak-koo piital-kaa bartan kab mileegaa.	us-koo milaa.
mujhee duusree kurtee kab milẽẽgee.	aap-koo milee.
saahab-koo ciTThii kab mileegii.	un-koo milii.
dukaandaarõõ-koo apnaa maal kab mileegaa.	un-koo milaa.
mujhee naii dhootiyãã kab milẽẽgii.	aap-koo milĩĩ.

J. Chain drill

Using the verbal phrase given by the instructor, ask the next student a kab question, putting the verb in the past.

Instructor: jaipur jaanaa. Go to Jaipur.
1st Student: wideešii jaipur kab gaee. When did the foreigner go to Jaipur?
2nd Student: pichlee saal gaee. He went last year.

Instructor: kapRee lee aanaa.
2nd Student: dhoobii kapRee kab lee aayaa.
3rd Student: kal šaam-kee pahlee lee aayaa.

Instructor:
saamaan nikalnaa
sahaaranpur ruknaa
hooTal lauTnaa
sabzii milnaa
khaanaa bannaa
phaaTak khulnaa
kaam ruknaa
sair šuruu hoonaa
rikšaa calnaa
hindustaan jaanaa

4. -waalaa with infinitives

In addition to its use with nouns and adjectives, -waalaa may also combine with verbal infinitives or infinitive phrases.

woo gããw-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ.	They are village residents.
woo jaanee-waalaa hai.	He is about to go (a goer).
woo kapRee beecnee-waalaa hai.	He is a cloth seller. He is about to sell cloth.

The two principal meanings of -waalaa constructions are illustrated above, as: a) someone who has certain characteristics (e.g., living in the village, selling clothes); or b) a person or thing about to perform an action. In this latter meaning -waalaa constructions are often used to indicate a type of future equivalent to the English 'to be about to.' The exact meaning of any particular -waalaa compound depends on the context. The first example above (literally, 'liver of a village') has only one translation. In order to convey future meaning one would have to say woo gããw-mẽẽ rahnee-waalaa hai. Since there are few people who are characterized simply by going the second example above is ordinarily translated 'about to.' Example three may have either translation.

-waalaa constructions with meaning (a) are often synonymous with sentences containing the relative joo:

yee gããw-kaa rahnee-waalaa aadmii hai.
yee woo aadmii hai joo gããw-mẽẽ rahtaa hai.

yee pagRii pahennee-waalaa aadmii hai.
yee woo aadmii hai joo pagRii pahentaa hai.

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
When will the man come?	He's about to arrive.
aadmii kab aaeegaa.	abhii aanee-waalaa hai.
gaaRii kab aaeegii.	aanee-waalii hai.
laRkiyãã kab aaẽẽgii.	aanee-waalii hãĩ.
gããw-kee loog kab aaẽẽgee.	aanee-waalee hãĩ.
aadmii ciTThii kab likheegaa.	abhii ciTThii likhnee-waalaa hai.
saahab ciTThii kab likhẽẽgee.	ciTThii likhnee-waalee hãĩ.
meem saahab ciTThii kab likhẽẽgii.	ciTThii-likhnee-waalii hãĩ.
laRkii ciTThii kab likheegii.	ciTThii likhnee-waalii hai.

sabzii kab bikeegii.	abhii biknee-waalii hai.
piital-kee bartan kab bikẽẽgee.	biknee-waalee hãĩ.
rooTiyãã kab bikẽẽgii.	biknee-waalii hãĩ.
aap-kaa maal kab bikeegaa.	biknee-waalaa hai.
khiRkiyãã kab khulẽẽgii.	abhii khulnee-waalii hãĩ.
sTeešan kab khuleegaa.	khulnee-waalaa hai.
darwaazee kab khulẽẽgee.	khulnee-waalee hãĩ.
phaaTak kab khuleegaa.	khulnee-waalaa hai.

B. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
He wears a white turban.	He's a white turban wearer.
woo safeed pagRii pahentaa hai.	woo safeed pagRii pahennee-waalaa hai.
woo madraasii saaRii pahentii hai.	madraasii saaRii pahennee-waalii hai.
woo juutee Thiik kartee hãĩ.	juutee Thiik karnee-waalee hãĩ.
woo naee juutee pahentaa hai.	naee juutee pahennee-waalaa hai.
woo saamaan uThaatee hãĩ.	saamaan uThaanee-waalee hãĩ.
woo hindii paRhaatee hãĩ.	hindii paRhaanee-waalee hãĩ.
woo piital-kee bartan beectaa hai.	piital-kee bartan beecnee-waalaa hai.
woo gaaRii calaataa hai.	gaaRii calaanee-waalaa hai.
woo phal beectii hãĩ.	phal beecnee-waalii hãĩ.
woo sabzii beectii hai.	sabzii beecnee-waalii hai.

C. Transformation drill

Repeat Drill B with the addition of aadmii or aurat.

Instructor	
woo safeed pagRii pahentaa hai.	woo safeed pagRii pahennee-waalaa aadmii hai.
woo madraasii saaRii pahentii hai.	woo madraasii saaRii pahennee-waalii aurat hai.

D. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
Those people live in a village.	See below.

woo loog yahãã-kee gããw-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo naii dillii-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo aagree-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo sahaaranpur-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo dhoobii-kii bastii-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo is hissee-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.
woo dillii-kee is hissee-mẽẽ rahtee hãĩ.

Class

They are villagers.

woo yahãã-kee gããw-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ.
naii dillii-kee
puraanee baazaar
aagree-kee
sahaaranpur-kee
dhoobii-kii bastii-kee
is hissee-kee
dillii-kee is hissee-kee

5. The vocative case

Marked masculine nouns have the endings -ee (singular) and -oo (plural) when employed in calling to someone. We call these vocative case endings. Feminine nouns take the oblique -õõ ending in the plural. Other nouns have no special vocative endings. Loan words such as bairaa are used by some people without the vocative endings.

kyõõ bhaaii, tããgee-waalee.	Say, tongawala.
kyõõ laRkee.	Say, boy.
ee laRkee, idhar aanaa.	Hey, boy, come here!
ee laRkoo, idhar aanaa.	Hey, boys, come here!
ee laRkii, idhar aanaa.	Hey, girl, come here!
ee laRkiyõõ, idhar aanaa.	Hey, girls, come here!

The vocative endings are used primarily with children and servants, but not in polite conversation among equals.

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Ask that boy.	Hey, boy, come here.
us laRkee-see puuchiyee.	ee laRkee idhar aanaa.
un laRkõõ-see puuchiyee.	laRkõõ
us phal-waalee-see puuchiyee.	phal-waalee
un laRkiyõõ-see puuchiyee.	laRkiyõõ
us moocii-see puuchiyee.	moocii
un bairõõ-see puuchiyee.	bairõõ
us dukaan-waalee-see puuchiyee.	dukaan-waalee
un kulii-see puuchiyee.	kulii
us moocii-see puuchiyee.	moocii

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Mr. Sharma knows the address.	Hey, Mr. Sharma, come here.
šarmaa jii pataa jaantee hãĩ.	šarmaa jii, idhar aaiyee.
woo laRkaa pataa jaantaa hai.	ee laRkee, idhar aanaa.
kamlaa jii pataa jaantii hãĩ.	kamlaa jii, idhar aaiyee.
woo kulii pataa jaantee hãĩ.	ee kulii, idhar aanaa.
woo bairee pataa jaantee hãĩ.	ee bairoo, idhar aanaa.
ḳhaan saahab pataa jaantee hãĩ.	ḳhaan saahab, idhar aaiyee.
woo laRkii pataa jaantii hai.	ee laRkii, idhar aanaa.
woo laRkiyãã pataa jaantii hãĩ.	ee laRkiyõõ, idhar aanaa.
woo moocii pataa jaantaa hai.	ee moocii, idhar aanaa.
woo Taiksii-waalaa pataa jaantaa hai.	ee Taiksii-waalee, idhar aanaa.
ušaa jii pataa jaantii hãĩ.	ušaa jii, idhar aaiyee.
woo pagRii-waalaa pataa jaantaa hai.	ee pagRii-waalee, idhar aanaa.

6. kyõõ, kis liyee; kyõõ ki, is liyee, is liyee ki

The question words kyõõ 'why' and kis liyee 'for what reason' correspond to kyõõ ki 'because,' is liyee 'therefore, for that reason' and is liyee ki 'for the reason that.' kyõõ is related to yũũ which occurred in yũũhii šahar-mẽẽ ghuumnaa thaa. Some people pronounce kyõõ as kyũũ. is liyee is an adverbial oblique construction grammatically similar to is taraf. It should be kept separate from is-kee liyee 'for this.' The position of kyõõ and kis liyee in the sentence is like that of kahãã; they ordinarily precede a verb, but when the verb itself is preceded by an object, they may occur either before or after the object.

itnii deer kyõõ huii. kyõõ ki bahut kaam thaa.
yahãã kapRee kyõõ beec rahee hãĩ. kyõõ ki jagah-ki kamii hai.
is liyee ki jagah-kii kamii hai.

kyõõ ki does not ordinarily start a sentence in formal Hindi. is liyee ki is used instead. In informal conversation, however, kyõõ ki does occur as a direct answer to a kyõõ or kis liyee question.

A. Conversational response drill: kyõõ

Instructor	Class
I'm going to Jaipur.	See below.

mujhee jaipur jaanaa hai.
saahab-koo gaaRii pakaRnii hai.
Taiksii-waalee-koo ghar DhũũDhnaa hai.
paRhee likhee aadmii-koo ciTThii likhnii hai.
tããgee-waalee-koo ghar lauTnaa hai.
rikšee-waalõõ-koo taaj mahal dikhaanaa hai.
widyaarthii-koo Toopii pahennii hai.
laRkee-koo doost-kii taalaaš karnii hai.
aap loogõõ-koo yee saaraa khaanaa banaanaa hai.
mujhee yee kaam šuruu karnaa hai.

Class

Why are you going to Jaipur?

aap-koo jaipur kyõõ jaanaa hai.
un-koo gaaRii kyõõ pakaRnii hai.
us-koo ghar kyõõ DhũũDhnaa hai.
us-koo ciTThii kyõõ likhnii hai.
us-koo ghar kyõõ lauTnaa hai.
un-koo taaj mahal kyõõ dikhaanaa hai.
us-koo Toopii kyõõ pahennii hai.
us-koo doost-kii taalaaš kyõõ karnii hai.
ham-koo yee saaraa khaanaa kyõõ banaanaa hai.
aap-koo yee kaam kyõõ šuruu karnaa hai.

B. Conversational response drill: kyõõ

The instructor asks the questions that the class responded with in Drill A.

Instructor	Class
Why are you going to Jaipur?	Because I have to go.
aap-koo jaipur kyõõ jaanaa hai.	hamẽẽ jaanaa hai
un-koo gaaRii kyõõ pakaRnii hai.	kyõõ ki jaanaa hii caahiyee.
	pakaRnii
	DhũũDhnaa
	likhnii
	lauTnaa
	dikhaanaa
	pahennii
	taalaaš karnaa
	banaanaa
	šuruu karnaa

C. Conversational response drill:

Repeat using is liyee ki instead of kyõõ ki in the answer and omitting the first phrase.

D. Individual conversational response drill: kyõõ

Instructor: Why are you going to Jaipur?
1st Student: Because I want to see the Palace of the Winds.

Instructor: aap-koo jaipur kyõõ jaanaa hai.
1st Student: hamee jaanaa hai kyõõ ki hawaa mahal deekhnaa caahtaa hũũ.

Instructor: saahab-koo gaaRii kyõõ pakaRnii hai.
2nd Student: kyõõ ki un-koo dillii jaanaa hai.

Instructor: Continue with the sentences under Instructor in Drill A, adding kyõõ to each.

E. Individual conversational response drill: kyõõ, is liyee ki

Instructor: Why are people selling their goods by the side of the road?
1st Student: Because there's a shortage of space.

Instructor: loog apnaa maal saRak-kee kinaaree kyõõ beec rahee hãĩ.
1st Student: is liyee ki jagah-kii kamii hai.

Instructor: dhoobii-koo itnii deer kyõõ huii.
2nd Student: is liyee ki us-koo bahut kaam thaa.

Instructor: rikšee-waalee-koo paanii kyõõ taalaaš karnaa thaa.
meem saahab apnee kapRee kyõõ jaldii caahtii thĩĩ.
saahab rikšee-waalee-koo utnaa paisaa kyõõ nahĩĩ deetee.
rikšee-waalaa zyaadaa paisaa kyõõ leetaa hai.
meem saahab kapRee-kii dukaan kyõõ DhũũDh rahii thĩĩ.
rikšee-kee saahab-koo kyõõ lauTnaa thaa.
wideešii dhoobii-koo TuuTee paisee kyõõ nahĩĩ deetaa.
saahab sTeešan-par Tikat kyõõ nahĩĩ ḳhariidtee.

F. Individual conversational response drill: kis liyee, is liyee

Repeat Drill E substituting kis liyee and is liyee for kyõõ and kyõõ ki.

Instructor: loog apnaa maal saRak-kee kinaaree kis liyee beec rahee hãĩ.
1st Student: jagah-kii kamii hai. is liyee saRak-kee kinaaree beec rahee hãĩ.

Instructor: dhoobii-koo itnii deer kis liyee huii.
2nd Student: us-koo bahut kaam thaa. is liyee us-koo itnii deer huii.

7. Oblique infinitives before verbs: -kee liyee

When the oblique of infinitives appears before certain verbs like aanaa, jaanaa, calnaa, lauTnaa, the meaning is the same as if the postpositional construction -kee liyee were used.

woo beecnee aatee hãĩ.	They come to sell.
woo beecnee-kee liyee aatee hãĩ.	They come in order to sell.

A. Substitution drill

They are coming in order to buy things.

woo ciizẽẽ (ḳhariidnee)-kee liyee aa rahee hãĩ.
beecnee
laanee
nikaalnee
DhũũDhnee
uThaanee

B. Substitution drill

Repeat Drill A omitting -kee liyee.

They are coming to buy luggage.

wood saamaan (ḳhariidnee) aa rahee hãĩ.

C. Substitution drill

What do people go to Agra for?

loog (aagree) kis liyee jaatee hãĩ.
jaipur
dillii
hindustaan
rajasthaan
baazaar
kapRee-kii dukaan

D. Chain drill

Base all questions and answers on the conversations.

Instructor:	loog aagree kis liyee jaatee hãĩ.	What do people go to Agra for?
1st Student:	ḳilaa deekhnee-kee liyee.	To see the fort.
Instructor:	loog juutee-kii dukaan kis liyee jaatee hãĩ.	
2nd Student:	juutee ḳhariidnee-kee liyee.	

8. huaa with expressions of time

huaa, the -aa participle of hoonaa, has the special meaning 'ago' in noun constructions after measures of time.

kuch din huee banee hãĩ.	They were built a few days ago.
eek haftaa huaa banaa hai.	It was built a week ago.

In these constructions huaa functions like a marked adjective agreeing with the preceding noun in number and gender.

A. Substitution drill

These stores were built a short time ago.

yee dukaanẽẽ kuch (din) huee banii hãĩ.
haftee
saal
ghanTee
deer
minaT
mahiinee

B. Substitution-agreement drill

The train left ten minutes ago.

gaaRii (das minaT) huee gaii.
eek ghanTaa
bahut deer
eek minaT
Dhaaii ghanTee
eek din
aadhaa ghanTaa

C. Double substitution-agreement drill

Mr. Singh went back five minutes ago.

(singh saahab) (pããc minaT) huee waapas gaee hãĩ.
rikšaa
aadhaa ghanTaa
gaaRii
kuch deer
laRkiyãã
doo haftee
pagRii-waalaa
eek saal

D. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor:	When did the train leave?	gaaRii kab lauTii.
1st Student:	Two hours ago.	doo ghanTee huee.
Instructor:	aap-koo yee piital-kaa bartan kab milaa.	
2nd Student:	eek haftaa huaa.	
Instructor:	yee naee Dhang-kii dukaanẽẽ kab banĩĩ. yee mahal kab ḳhaalii huaa. aap-kee doost is šahar-mẽẽ kab aaee. gaaRii pleeTfaarm-par kab khaRii thii. saarii sabzii kab bikii. aap-kee paas kab bahut paisaa thaa. aap naii bastii pahlii baar kab gaee. aap is šahar-mẽẽ pahlii baar kab aaee. aap klaas kab aaee.	

Rapid Response

Group 1

raajasthaan-kii raajdhaanii-kaa naam kyaa hai.
kyaa tããgee-waalaa raajasthaanii hai?
kyaa naee hissee-mẽẽ puraanii imaartẽẽ hãĩ?
šahar-kee kis hissee-mẽẽ naee Dhang-kii dukaanee banii hãĩ.
jaipur-mẽẽ kis ḳism-kee bartan biktee hãĩ.
puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ loog kahãã kapRaa bectee hãĩ.
kyaa puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ jagah-kii kamii hai?
kyaa šahar-kee rahnee-waalee sabzii beecnee gããw-mẽẽ jaatee hãĩ?
taazii sabzii kin logõõ-kee paas miltii hai.
hawaa mahal kis šahar-mẽẽ hai.
jaipur-mẽẽ raaniyãã kahãã rahtii thĩĩ.
hawaa mahal-mẽẽ ab kaun rahtaa hai.
kyaa safeed-pagRii-waalaa aadmii ciTThii likh rahaa hai?
wideešii jaldii kyõõ lauTnaa caahtee hãĩ.
kyaa wideešii-koo jaipur pasand aayaa?

Group 2

kyaa jaipur bahut baRaa šahar hai?
kyaa wideešii puraanee baazaar-see sair karnaa šuruu kartee hãĩ?
jaipur-mẽẽ naee Dhang-kii dukaanẽẽ kab banii hãĩ.
kyaa jaipur-mẽẽ piital-kee bartan biktee hãĩ?
amriikaa-mẽẽ kis ḳism-kee bartan biktee hãĩ.
kyaa puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ naee Dhang-kii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ?
puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ loog saRak-kee kinaaree kapRaa kyõõ bectee hãĩ.
gããw-waalõõ-kee paas rooz kaisii sabzii hootii hai.
jaipur-kee mahal-kaa naam kyaa hai.
hawaa mahal-mẽẽ kaun rahtaa thaa.
kyaa wideešii beepaRhee hãĩ?
duusraa aadmii kis-kii ciTThii likh rahaa hai.
kyaa wideešii-koo gaaRii pakRnii hai?

Review Conversations

saRak-par

1. A: kyõõ bhaaii, kyaa yahii yahãã-kii naii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ?
B: jii nahĩĩ, yee too kaafii puraanii hãĩ.
A: too naii dukaanẽẽ kidhar hãĩ?
B: naii dukaanẽẽ udhar hãĩ, thooRii duur.
A: leekin yee imaartẽẽ too naii lagtii hãĩ.
B: jii nahĩĩ, sirf yee saamnee-kaa hissaa nayaa banaa hai.

2. A: bhaaii saahab, bartanõõ-kii dukaan kahãã hai.
B: kis ḳism-kee bartanõõ-kii dukaan.
A: mãĩ piital-kee bartanõõ-kii dukaan DhũũDh rahaa thaa.
B: aap-koo kaisaa bartan caahiyee.
A: mãĩ jaipur-kee kuch mašhuur bartan deekhnaa caahtaa hũũ.
B: acchaa, too siidhee jaaiyee, puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ bahut dukaanẽẽ hãĩ.

baat ciit

3. A: kahiyee warmaa jii, kaisee hãĩ.
B: Thiik hũũ, aap kal kahãã gaee thee.
A: zaraa jaipur gayaa thaa.
B: kaisaa lagaa aap-koo jaipur.
A: jaipur bahut pasand aayaa. baRaa sundar šahar hai.
B: hãã, isii liyee too jaipur itnaa mašhuur hai.

4. A: aap-koo jaipur-kaa puraanaa hissaa kaisaa lagaa.
B: acchaa lagaa, leekin wahãã jagah-kii bahut kamii hai.
A: hãã, isii liyee saRak-kee kinaaree chooTii chooTii dukaanẽẽ hãĩ.
B: leekin hawaa mahal mujhee bahut acchaa lagaa.
A: hãã, baRaa sundar banaa hai, pahlee us-mẽẽ raaniyãã rahtii thĩĩ.

tããgee-mẽẽ

5. A: sunoo, mujhee hawaa mahal deekhnaa hai. kidhar-see caloogee.
B: puraanee baazaar-see hoo-kar calũũ?
A: Thiik hai. leekin mujhee kuch bartan ḳhariidnee hãĩ.
B: bartan-kii mašhuur dukaanẽẽ bhii usii taraf hãĩ.
A: acchaa, dukaan-kee saamnee rooknaa.

6. A: yee hai woo dukaan jisee aap DhũũDh rahii thĩĩ.
B: yee too kapRee-kii dukaan hai. kyaa yahãã saaRiyãã bhii milẽẽgĩĩ?
A: zaruur, yee dukaan jaipurii saaRiyõõ-kee liyee mašhuur hai.
B: kyaa jaipurii pagRii bhii yahãã miltii hai?
A: kyõõ nahĩĩ, woo too yahãã-kii sabhii dukaanõõ-mẽẽ miltii hai.

Unit IV Part B

Conversation

1 fatehpur siikrii-kee khãDhar.

2 gaaiD-kee saath.

---

3 gaaiD: mãĩ sarkaarii gaaiD hũũ. sabhii mašhuur imaartõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataaũũgaa.

4 wideešii: is-koo, ũũcee makaan-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ.

5 gaaiD: is-koo buland darwaazaa kahtee hãĩ. isee akbar-nee banwaayaa thaa.

6 aaj-kal is-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.

7 wideešii: ab too is-kee paas bilkul ujaaR hoo gayaa hai.

8 gaaiD: pahlee bhii reegistaan thaa. akbar-nee isee basaayaa.

9 wideešii: kyaa us zamaanee-mẽẽ yahãã bahut aabaadii thii.

10 gaaiD: h hãã, akbar-nee isee apnii raajdhaanii banaaii.

11 leekin baad-mẽẽ yahãã paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii, aur usee yahãã-see aagree jaanaa paRaa.

12 wideešii: hãã, mãĩ-nee parsõõ aagree-mẽẽ us-kaa ḳilaa deekhaa.

---

13 wideešii: ab bhiitar calẽẽ, šaahii masjid-kii taraf.

14 gaaiD: jii hãã. leekin abhii Thairiyee. pahlee apnee juutõõ-par g̣ilaaf caRhwaaiyee.

15 deekhiyee, diiwaarõõ-par kaisaa ḳhuubsuurat kaam banaa hai.

16 wideešii: aisii imaartẽẽ hamaaree yahãã nahĩĩ hootii hãĩ.

17 gaaiD: idhar deekhiyee, yee jaalii kitnii acchii banii hai.

18 andar-see baahar aap saaf saaf deekh saktee hãĩ.

---

19 wideešii: yahãã kyaa hootaa thaa.

20 gaaiD: yahãã uupar akbar apnee waziirõõ-kee saath baiThtaa thaa.

21 wideešii: yee farš-par joo nišaan hãĩ, woo kis liyee banaaee gaee thee?

22 gaaiD: yee abkar-nee pacciisii kheelnee-kee liyee banwaaee thee.

23 wideešii: kyaa yee sab caarõõ taraf raaniyõõ-kee mahal banee hãĩ?

24 gaaiD: jii hãã. in-mẽẽ un-kee aaraam-kaa sab intizaam thaa.

25 wideešii: siikrii too bahut acchaa sthaan hai. mauḳaa milaa too phir aaũũgaa.

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

gaaiD	A guide (m/f)
wideešii	A foreigner (m/f)

	fatehpur siikrii	Sikri (Fatehpur Sikri) (m)
	khãDhar	ruin (m)
1	fatehpur siikrii-kee khãDhar.	The ruins at Sikri.
	gaaiD	guide (m)
2	gaaiD-kee saath.	With a guide.
	sarkaar	government (f)
	sarkaarii	official (adj)
	mašhuur	famous
	sabhii	sab + hii
	-kee baaree-mẽẽ	about
3 G:	mãĩ sarkaarii gaaiD hũũ. sabhii mašhuur imaartõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataaũũgaa.	I'm the official guide. I'll tell you about all the famous buildings.
	ũũcaa	high
4 W:	is-koo, ũũcee makaan-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ.	What do they call this high building?
	buland	high (rare)
	darwaazaa	door
	banwaanaa	to have something made
	akbar	Akbar
	akbar-nee	by Akbar
5 G:	is-koo buland darwaazaa kahtee hãĩ. isee akbar-nee banwaayaa thaa.	It's called the Buland Darwaza. Akbar built it.
	aaj kal	these days
	is-kii marammat hoo rahii hai	it is being repaired
6 G:	aaj kal is-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.	It is being repaired these days.
	ujaaRnaa	to desert
	ujaaR hoo jaanaa	to become deserted
7 W:	ab too is-kee paas bilkul ujaaR hoo gayaa hai.	But now everything around it is deserted.
	reegistaan	desert (m)
	basnaa	to settle (intr)
	basaanaa	to cause to be inhabited
8 G:	pahlee bhii reegistaan thaa. akbar-nee isee basaayaa.	Originally it was a desert. Akbar built the town here.

	aabaadii	population, inhabitants
	zamaanaa	time, age
9 W:	kyaa us zamaanee-mẽẽ yahãã bahut aabaadii thii.	Did a lot of people live here in those days?
	banaanaa	to make
10 G:	hãã, akbar-nee isee apnii raajdhaanii banaaii.	Yes, Akbar made it his capital.
	baad-mẽẽ	afterwards
	jaanaa paRaa	to have to go
	usee jaanaa paRaa	he was forced to go
11 G:	leekin baad-mẽẽ yahãã paanii-kii kamii hoo gaaii, aur usee yahãã-see aagree jaanaa paRaa.	But a little later a water shortage developed here, and he had to go from here to Agra.
12 W:	hãã, mãĩ-nee parsõõ aagree-mẽẽ us-kaa ḳilaa deekhaa.	Yes, I saw his fort in Agra the day before yesterday.
	bhiitar	inside (adv)
	šaah	king (m)
	šaahii	royal (adj)
	masjid	mosque (f)
13 W:	ab bhiitar calẽẽ, šaahii masjid-kii taraf.	Let's go in now, toward the royal mosque.
	g̣ilaaf	cover (m)
	caRhnaa	to climb (intr)
	caRhwaanaa	to make someone make someone climb
14 G:	jii hãã. leekin abhii Thairiyee. pahlee apnee juutõõ-par g̣ilaaf caRhwaaiyee.	Yes, but stop for a moment and have covers put on your shoes first.
	diiwaar	wall (f)
	ḳhuub	fine (adv)
	suurat	face, appearance (f)
	ḳhuubsuurat	beautiful (adj)
15 G:	deekhiyee, diiwaarõõ-par kaisaa ḳhuubsuurat kaam banaa hai.	Look, how beautiful the work there on the walls is.
	hamaaree yahãã	in our place
16 W:	aisii imaartẽẽ hamaaree yahãã nahĩĩ hootii hãĩ.	We don't have such buildings in our country.
	jaalii	screen, net
17 G:	idhar deekhiyee, yee jaalii kitnii acchii banii hai.	Look here. Notice how well this screen is made.
	saaf	clean, clear (adj)
	saaf saaf	very clearly
18 G:	andar-see baahar aap saaf saaf deekh saktee hãĩ.	From the inside you can see outside very clearly.

	hoonaa	to take place
	hootaa hai	takes place
	hootaa thaa	used to take place
19 W:	yahãã kyaa hootaa thaa.	What used to take place here?
	waziir	Mughal minister
20 G:	yahãã uupar akbar apnee waziirõõ-kee saath baiThtaa thaa.	Here above, Akbar used to sit with his ministers.
	farš	floor (m)
	nišaan	mark (m)
21 W:	yee farš-par joo nišaan hãĩ, woo kis liyee banaaee gaee thee?	These marks on the floor -- what were they made for?
	yee akbar-nee banwaaee thee	Akbar had these made
	pacciisii	Parchisi (f) (a game)
	kheelnaa	to play
	pacciisii kheelnee-kee liyee	for playing Parchisi
22 G:	yee abkar-nee pacciisii kheelnee-kee liyee banwaaee thee.	Akbar had these made for playing Parchisi.
	caarõõ taraf	on all four sides
	raaniyõõ-kee mahal	palaces of the ranis
23 W:	kyaa yee sab carõõ taraf raaniyõõ-kee mahal banee hãĩ.	Are these palaces on all four sides for the ranis?
	intizaam	arrangement (m)
	intizaam karnaa	to make arrangements
	aaraam	comfort (m)
24 G:	jii hãã. in-mẽẽ un-kee aaraam-kaa sab intizaam thaa.	Yes. All arrangements for their comfort were made.
	sthaan	place
	mauḳaa	occasion, opportunity (m)
	mauḳaa milnaa	to find an opportunity
	mauḳaa milaa too	if I find an opportunity
25 W:	siikrii too bahut acchaa sthaan hai. mauḳaa milaa too phir aaũũgaa.	Sikri is a very nice place. If I have the opportunity I'll come back again.

Cultural Notes

Fatepur Sikri, today a prominent tourist attraction, was the capital of Moghul India from 1569 to 1584. Located 25 miles west of Agra near the road to Jaipur, it was the home of Akbar (ruled 1556-1605), greatest of the Moghul emperors.

The Moghuls came originally from one of the small states of south central Asia. Sprung from the lines of both Timur and Genghis Khan, they eventually became an Indian dynasty. After a thirty-year struggle for supremacy in India, beginning in 1526 with the Afghans, Moghul boundaries were more or less stabilized and the Moghul empire achieved its greatest administrative control and centralization under Akbar. The great cultural achievements of Indo-Muslim art and architecture, such as Fatepur Sikri, were largely produced during the reigns of Akbar and the two succeeding emperors, Jahangir and Shah Jahan. Under a fourth great Moghul emperor, Aurangzeb (ruled 1657-1707), a Muslim zealot, the resources of the empire were frittered away by a quarter-century of war in the Deccan, opening the door to a century of anarchy out of which the British emerged victorious in India about the beginning of the 19th century.

Fatepur Sikri is a typical example of Moghul construction. It is at once fort and palace, and includes court residences for ministers and servants and a mosque. Particularly notable are the diwaan-i-khaas, the reception hall for great ministers, the diwaan-i-aam, the reception hall for the people, the mosque and the residences. The palace was abandoned after 1584 and has lain deserted ever since except for a period of use as a contonment by British soldiers in the 19th century. Despite four centuries of neglect, the aridity of the climate in this area on the fringe of the Rajasthan desert has preserved the monument, now a favorite excursion spot. The mosque is kept in repair by the local Muslim community. The countryside about Fatepur Sikri is largely deserted except for a few villages.

Word Study

1. Numbers 41-50

iktaaliis	41	chayaaliis	46
baiaaliis	42	sãĩtaaliis	47
teetaaliis	43	aRtaaliis	48
cawaaliis	44	uncaas	49
pãĩtaaliis	45	pacaas	50

2. Related word pairs

sarkaar	government	šaah	ruler (old fashioned)
sarkaarii	governmental	šaahii	belonging to the ruler, royal

kamii	shortage
kam	few

Note that the derivative suffix -ii may be used to form adjectives from nouns in some instances and nouns from adjectives in others.

3. Related adverbs of time and manner.

Adverbs commonly used in answer to kab questions:

pahlee	at first, first	us samay	at that time
baad-mẽẽ	afterwards	us zamaanee-mẽẽ	in those days
biic-mẽẽ	in between, in the middle		

pahlee paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii.
baad-mẽẽ paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii.
biic-mẽẽ paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii.
us samay paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii.
us zamaanee-mẽẽ paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii.

Adverbs commonly used in answer to kaisee questions:

dhiiree	slow, slowly	sãbhal-kar	carefully
jaldii	fast	is tarah	like this
bac-kar	carefully	aisee	like this

sunoo Taiksii Draaiwar, dhiiree caloo.
sunoo Taiksii Draaiwar, jaldii caloo.
sunoo Taiksii Draaiwar, is tarah caloo.
sunoo Taiksii Draaiwar, bac-kar caloo.
sunoo Taiksii Draaiwar, sãbhal-kar caloo.
sunoo Taiksii Draaiwar, aisee caloo.

4. Terms for the inside of buildings

darwaazaa	door (m)	meez	table (f)
diwaar	wall (f)	kursii	chair
farš	floor (m)	almaarii	closet
zamiin	ground, land, floor (f)	chat	roof (f)
khiRkii	window		

5. Causative verbs

Passive verbs:

bannaa	to be made	basnaa	to be settled
banaanaa	to make	basaanaa	to settle (tr)
banwaanaa	to have made	baswaanaa	to have settled

Active verbs:

karnaa	to do
karaanaa	to have (something) done
karwaanaa	to have someone do something
caRhnaa	to climb
caRhaanaa	to make climb
caRhwaanaa	to make someone make someone climb

Grammar Drills

1. Pattern expansion

1.1 Pattern 1

A. Substitution drill

Let's go inside now, towards the royal mosque.

ab (bhiitar) calẽẽ, šaahii masjid-kii taraf.
uupar
niicee
baahar
ḳilee-kee andar
makaan-kee baahar
mahal-kee bhiitar

B. Substitution drill

Let's go inside the gate toward the royal mosque.

phaaTak-kee bhiitar calẽẽ, (šaahii masjid)-kii taraf.
buland darwaazaa
ṛaaniyõõ-kee mahal
masjid
ũũcii imaarat
hawaa mahal
taaj mahal

C. Individual conversational response drill

When the question asked by the instructor as a wideešii contains kahãã, answer with one of the substitutions in Drill A. When the question contains -kis taraf, answer with one of the substitutions from Drill B.

wideešii: ab kahãã calẽẽ. Where should we go now?
wideešii: ab uupar calẽẽ. Let's go upstairs.

wideešii: ab kis taraf calẽẽ.
wideešii: masjid-kii taraf.

1.2 Pattern 2

A. Substitution drill

There was a large population here in those times.

(us zamaanee-mẽẽ) yahãã bahut aabaadii thee.
aaj kal
akbar-kee samay-mẽẽ
in dinõõ-mẽẽ
pichlee saal
das saal huee
is saal

B. Chain drill

wideešii: Are there a lot of inhabitants in that village?
hindustaanii: Yes, today there are a lot of inhabitants.

wideešii: kyaa us gããw-mẽẽ bahut aabaadii hai?
hindustaanii: jii hãã, aaj kal bahut aabaadii hai.

wideešii: kyaa us gããw-mẽẽ bahut aabaadii hai?
hindustaanii: nahĩĩ, leekin das saal huee bahut aabaadii thii.

1.3 Pattern 3

A. Substitution drill

I'll tell you about all the famous buildings.

(mašhuur imaartõõ)-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataaẽẽgee.
siikrii-kee khãDhar
siikrii-kee reegistaan
siikrii-kii diiwaarõõ
raajastaan-kii raajdhaanii
akbar-kii raaniyõõ
akbar-kee waziirõõ
musalmaanõõ-kii masjid
paanii-kii kamii
puraanee zamaanee

B. Individual conversational response drill

wideešii: Which buildings are you going to tell me about?
gaaiD: About the important buildings.

wideešii: kin imaartõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ aap bataaẽẽgee.
gaaiD: mašhuur imaartõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ.

wideešii: kis khãDhar-kee baaree-mẽẽ aap bataaẽẽgee.
gaaiD: siikrii-kee khãDhar-kee baaree-mẽẽ.

C. Chain drill

Give any answer that you can.

Instructor: aap kis-kee baaree-mẽẽ baat kar saktee hãĩ. What can you talk about?
1st Student: dillii-kee baazaarõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ. About the Delhi markets.

1st Student: aap kis-kee baaree-mẽẽ baat kar saktee hãĩ.
2nd Student: yuu pii-kii raajdhaanii-kee baaree-mẽẽ.

1.4 Pattern 4

A. Substitution drill

All arrangements in the palaces were made for their comfort.

mahlõõ-mẽẽ (un-kee aaraam)-kaa sab intizaam thaa.
kaam karnee
pacciisii kheelnee
urduu paRhaanee
khaanaa banaanee
haath dhoonee

B. Chain drill

wideešii: What arrangements were made in the palaces?
gaaiD: All arrangements for the people's comfort were made.

wideešii: mahlõõ-mẽẽ kin ciizõõ-kaa intizaam thaa.
gaaiD: loogõõ-kee aaraam-kaa sab intizaam thaa.

wideešii: mahlõõ-mẽẽ kin ciizõõ-kaa intizaam thaa.
gaaiD: khaanaa banaanee-kaa intizaam thaa.

1.5 Pattern 5

A. Substitution drill

From the inside you can see outside very clearly.

(andar-see baahar) aap saaf saaf deekh saktee hãĩ.
uupar-see niicee
baahar-see bhiitar
bhiitar-see baahar
idhar-see udhar
is taraf-see us taraf

B. Expansion-agreement drill

Frame: He used to sit.

Akbar	Akbar used to sit.
here above	Akbar used to sit here above.

Frame: baiThtaa thaa.

akbar	akbar baiThtaa thaa.
yahãã uupar	akbar yahãã uupar baiThtaa thaa.
raaniyãã	
wahãã niicee	
gããw-waalee	
baaĩĩ taraf	
akbar-kee waziir	
daahinii taraf	

2. The past of -nee verbs

The past of transitive verbs is expressed through -aa participle constructions which are grammatically similar to those occurring with indirect verbs and other intransitives like biknaa.

is ḳism-kee bartan kabhii nahĩĩ deekhee.	I never saw vessels of this kind.
is ḳism-kee bartan kabhii nahĩĩ milee.	Vessels of this kind were never available (received).

The literal translation of the first example is 'vessels of this kind were never seen.' In both of the above constructions the grammatical subject represents the thing that undergoes the action. If an actor is to be expressed with -aa participles like deekhaa, it must appear in a special oblique case construction followed by the post-position -nee. Verbs like deekhnaa, which in -aa participle constructions require -nee for the actor are called -nee verbs.

us-nee is ḳism-kee bartan kabhii nahĩĩ deekhee.	He never saw vessels of this kind.
us-koo is ḳism-kee bartan kabhii nahĩĩ milee.	Vessels of this kind were never received by (available to) him.

Note that the -nee constructions differ from the indirect verb constructions only by the fact that -nee is used for the actor instead of -koo. For this reason -nee constructions also create some difficulties for speakers of English since we can say 'he sees,' 'he saw' whereas the Hindi equivalent for the second expression would be 'by him was seen.'

woo piital-kee bartan deekhtaa hai.	He sees the copper vessels.
us-nee piital-kee bartan deekhee.	He saw the copper vessels.

A. Substitution-agreement drill

The foreigner has never seen vessels of this kind.

wideešii-nee (is ḳism-kee bartan) kabhii nahĩĩ deekhee.
is ḳism-kee imaartẽẽ
aisee khãDhar
is ḳism-kaa ġilaaf
aisee nišaan
is ḳism-kaa farš
aisii jaalii
aisaa reegistaan

B. Substitution-agreement drill

He took out the things in the room.

us-nee (kamree-kee saamaan) nikaal diyee.
sab jaaliyãã
meeraa jhoolaa
safeed meez
chooTee bakas
bhaarii kursii
hindii-kii kitaabẽẽ
kaccii sabzii
meeraa bistar

C. Substitution drill

We've never seen vessels of this kind.

is ḳism-kee bartan ham-nee kabhii nahĩĩ (deekhee).
ḳhariidnee
diyee
uThaaee
Thiik kiyee.
nikaalee
banwaaee
beecee

D. Double substitution-agreement drill

Did you cook this morning?

kyaa aap-nee saweeree	(khaanaa)	(banaayaa)?
	rooTiyãã	
		khaaĩĩ
	khurcan	
		ḳhariidii
	juutee	
		pahenee
	dhootii	

E. Conversational response drill

Two guides are comparing notes.

pahlaa gaaiD	duusraa gaaiD
Did the sahab read Hindi?	Yes, he did.
kyaa saahab-nee hindii paRhii?	hãã, paRhii.
kyaa saahab-nee urduu paRhii?	paRhii.
kyaa saahab-nee darwaazaa deekhaa?	deekhaa.
kyaa saahab-nee sawaal puuchee?	puuchee.
kyaa saahab-nee pacciisii kheelii?	kheelii.
kyaa saahab-nee ḳilaa deekhaa?	deekhaa.
kyaa saahab-nee g̣ilaaf caRhwaayaa?	caRhwaayaa.
kyaa saahab-nee miThaaiyãã ḳhariidĩĩ?	ḳhariidĩĩ.
kyaa saahab-nee kulii bulaayaa?	bulaayaa.

F. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Did you buy a sari?	Yes, I just bought one.
kyaa aap-nee saaRii khariidii?	hãã, khariid lii.
kyaa aap-nee khaanaa khaayaa.	khaa liyaa.
kyaa aap-nee miThaaiyãã banaaĩĩ.	banaa lĩĩ.
kyaa aap-nee paanii piyaa?	pii liyaa.
kyaa aap-nee pacciisii kheelii?	kheel lii.
kyaa aap-nee darwaazaa khoolaa?	khool liyaa.
kyaa aap-nee bahut sawaal puuchee?	puuch liyee.
kyaa aap-nee urduu paRhii?	paRh lii.
kyaa aap-nee kursiyãã uThaaĩĩ.	uThaa lĩĩ.

G. Conversational response drill

pahlaa gaaiD	duusraa gaaiD
Did you show the man the Buland Darwaza?	Yes, I showed it to him.
kyaa aap-nee saahab-koo buland darwaazaa dikhaayaa.	hãã, dikhaa diyaa.
kyaa aap-nee un-kee juutõõ-par g̣ilaaf caRhaayaa?	caRhaa diyaa.
kyaa aap-nee un-kee juutee Thiik kiyee?	Thiik kar diyee.
kyaa aap-nee un-kaa rikšaa bulaayaa?	bulaa diyaa.
kyaa aap-nee un-kee kurtee saaf kiyee.	saaf kar diyee.
kyaa aap-nee un-kii dhootiyãã ginii?	gin dĩĩ.
kyaa aap-nee un-kii ciTThii likhii?	likh dii.
kyaa aap-nee un-kee moozee dhulaaee?	dhulaa diyee.

F. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Does the lady ever buy bananas?	See below.

kyaa meem saahab kabhii keelee ḳhariidtii hãĩ?
kyaa wideešii kabhii siikrii deektaa hai?
kyaa yaatrii kabhii imaartẽẽ deekhtaa hai?
kyaa dhoobii kabhii kapRee dhootaa hai?
kyaa gaaiD kabhii taaj mahal dikhaatee hãĩ.
kyaa gaaiD kabhii juutõõ-par g̣ilaaf caRhwaataa hai?
kyaa raajaa kabhii darwaazaa banwaataa hai?
kyaa laRkee kabhii pacciisii kheeltee hãĩ?
kyaa raajaa kabhii darwaazaa banwaataa hai?
kyaa laRkaa kabhii makaan-kii taalaaš kartaa hai.

Class

Yes, she bought some just yesterday.

hãã, kal hii keelee ḳhariidee.
siikrii deekhii.
imaartẽẽ deekhĩĩ.
kapRee dhooee.
taaj mahal dikhaayaa.
g̣ilaaf caRhwaaee.
darwaazaa banwaayaa.
pacciisii kheelii.
nišaan banaayaa.
taalaaš kii.

3. -nee actors

As explained in Section 2, -nee is used exclusively to designate the actor in certain -aa participle constructions. Nouns and pronouns preceeding -nee appear in the oblique case form, with the following exceptions: a) mãĩ 'I' does not change; b) the oblique plurals of woo, yee, kaun add hõõ before -nee to form unhõõ, inhõõ, kinhõõ.

Here are some more examples:

is aadmii-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	This man had the fort built.
in aadmiyõõ-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	These men had the fort built.
is-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	He had the fort built.
us-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	He had the fort built.
kis-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	Who (sg) had the fort built?
inhõõ-nee kilaa banwaayaa.	They had the fort built.
unhõõ-nee kilaa banwaayaa.	
kinhõõ-nee kilaa banwaayaa.	Who (pl) had the fort built?
mãĩ-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	I had the fort built.
ham-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	We had the fort built.
tum-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	Who (sg) had the fort built?

A. Substitution-agreement drill

Did you see Sikri?

kyaa aap-nee (siikrii) deekhii?
taaj mahal
siikrii-kee khãDhar
jaipur
jaaliyãã
šaahii masjid
cããdnii cauk
hawaa mahal
laal ḳilaa
raajasthaan-kii raajdhaanii

B. Chain drill

hindustaanii:	kyaa aap-nee siikrii deekhii?	Did you see Sikri?
wideešii:	hãã, mãĩ-nee deekhii.	Yes, I saw it.
hindustaanii:	kyaa aap-nee taaj mahal deekhaa?	
wideešii:	hãã, mãĩ-nee deekhaa.	

C. Chain drill

hindustaanii:	aap-nee kyaa deekhaa.	What did you see?
wideešii:	mãĩ-nee siikrii deekhii.	I saw Sikri.
hindustaanii:	aap-nee kyaa deekhaa.	
wideešii:	mãĩ-nee siikrii-kee khãDhar deekhee.	

D. Substitution drill

The foreigner saw Akbar's fort.

(wideešii-nee) akbar-kaa ḳilaa deekhaa.
sab loogõõ-nee
laRkiyõõ-nee
pagRii-waalee-nee
saahabõõ-nee
yaatrii-nee

E. Substitution drill

I had the clothes washed.

(mãĩ-nee) kapRee dhulaaee.
ham-nee
aap-nee
tum-nee
us bairee-nee
us-nee
un bairõõ-nee
unhõõ-nee
is laRkii-nee
is-nee
is laRkiyõõ-nee
inhõõ-nee

F. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
The guide told about Agra.	He told us about Agra.
us gaaiD-nee aagree-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataayaa.	us-nee aagree-kee....
un yaatriyõõ-nee ḳilee-see šuruu kiyaa.	unhõõ-nee ḳilee-see....
is pagRii-waalee-nee ciTThii likhii.	is-nee ciTThii....
in kuliyõõ-nee saamaan uThaaee.	unhõõ-nee saamaan....
us wideešii-nee akbar-kaa ḳilaa deekhaa.	us-nee akbar-kaa....

un loogõõ-nee meeraa intizaar kiyaa.	unhõõ-nee meeraa....
is aadmii-nee makaan dikhaayaa.	is-nee makaan....
us yaatrii-nee khiRkii khoolii.	us-nee khiRkii....
in rikšee-waalõõ-nee bahut paisaa liyaa.	inhõõ-nee bahut....
us dhoobii-nee ḳamiiz saaf kii.	us-nee ḳamiiz....

G. Double substitution drill

The people didn't give any money.

(un loogõõ-nee) (paisaa) nahĩĩ diyaa.
unhõõ-nee
kapRee
is dhoobii-nee
ḳamiiz
is-nee
dhootiyãã
šarmaa jii
rupaee
unhõõ-nee
rooTiyãã
ušaa jii
kurtaa
ḳhaan saahab
kursii

H. Conversational response drill

Repeat Drill F in Section 2, adding a pronoun subject to the answer. Use a woo form when neither yee nor woo is specified.

Instructor	Class
Does the lady ever buy bananas?	Yes, she bought some bananas just yesterday.
kyaa meem saahab kabhii keelee ḳhariidtii hãĩ?	hãã, unhõõ-nee kal hii keelee ḳhariidee.

I. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor:	akbar-nee kyaa banwaayaa thaa.	What did Akbar have built?
1st Student:	us-nee buland darwaazaa banwaayaa thaa.	He had the Buland Darwaza built.

Instructor: farš-par kyaa banwaayaa.
2nd Student: us-nee nišaan banwaaee.

Instructor: nišaan kis liyee banwaaee.
kyaa basaayaa.
aagree-mẽẽ kyaa banwaayaa.
apnii raaniyõõ-kee liyee kyaa banwaayaa.
raaniyõõ-kee aaraam-kee liyee kyaa kiyaa.
diiwaarõõ-par kyaa banwaayaa.
waziirõõ-kee saath baiThnee-kee liyee kyaa banwaayaa.

K. Transformation drill

Instructor

Those people sell their vegetables.

woo loog apnii sabzii beectee hãĩ.
woo wideešii andar-see baahar deekhtaa hai.
yee hooTal-waalee aaraam-kaa sab intizaam kartee hãĩ.
yee gaaiD juutõõ-par g̣ilaaf caRhwaataa hai.
woo moocii bahut ḳhuubsuurat kaam kartaa hai.
woo loog buland darwaazee-kii marammat kartee hãĩ.
yee tããgee-waalaa jaipur-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataataa hai.
yee Tiicar aaTh bajee klaas šuruu kartee hãĩ.
yee sab widyaarthii hindii paRhtee hãĩ.
yee kulii meeree bakas uThaataa hai.
woo gããw-waaliyãã dukaanẽẽ lagaatii hãĩ.
yee hooTal-kaa bairaa kapRee likhtaa hai.
woo sTeešan-kaa kulii saamaan nikaaltaa hai.

Class

They sold their vegetables.

unhõõ-nee apnii sabzii beecii.
us-nee andar-see baahar deekhaa.
inhõõ-nee aaraam-kaa sab intizaam kiyee.
is-nee juutõõ-par g̣ilaaf caRhwaaee.
us-nee bahut ḳhuusuurat kaam kiyaa.
unhõõ-nee buland darwaazee-kii marammat kii.
is-nee jaipur-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataayaa.
inhõõ-nee aaTh bajee klaas šuruu kii.
inhõõ-nee hindii paRhii.
is-nee meeree bakas uThaaee.
unhõõ-nee dukaanẽẽ lagaaĩĩ.
is-nee kapRee likhee.
us-nee saamaan nikaalaa.

4. The past of transitive non-nee verbs and non-nee compounds.

There are a few common transitive verbs which do not take -nee with -aa participles. These include laanaa 'to bring,' bhuulnaa 'to forget.' We call them transitive non-nee verbs. samajhnaa 'to understand' acts as a non-nee verb when it does not have an object and as a -nee verb whenever an object is present. kheelnaa 'to play' takes -nee only in expressions such as kheel kheelnaa 'to play a game' where kheel is a noun. kheelnaa acts as a non-nee verb when it has no object.

kyaa tum kapRee laaee?	Did you bring the clothes?
kyaa aap samjhee?	Did you understand?
but	
us-nee aap-kii hindii samjhii.	He understood your Hindi.

Note that in contrast to what we find with -nee verbs, the grammatical behavior of these verbs as well as that of the intransitives in the jaanaa aanaa group mentioned in Unit 4A, resembles that of English verbs in that the actor is expressed in the same way in past and present constructions.

laRkaa rooTii nahĩĩ laataa.	The boy doesn't bring the bread.
laRkaa rooTii nahĩĩ laayaa.	The boy didn't bring the bread.

laRkaa nahĩĩ aataa.	The boy doesn't come.
laRkaa nahĩĩ aayaa.	The boy didn't come.

The auxiliary saknaa 'to be able' is also a non -nee verb. Any compound verb construction in which saknaa or other non-nee verbs such as aanaa or jaanaa serve as the auxiliary is also a non -nee construction. aanaa and jaanaa, however, compound primarily with intransitive verbs. Whenever they do compound with transitive verbs, the resulting construction has an idiomatic meaning of its own.

us-nee ḳilaa banwaayaa.	He had the fort built.
woo ḳilaa banwaa sakaa.	He was able to have the fort built.
us-nee rooTii lii.	He took the bread.
woo rooTii lee aayaa.	He brought the bread over.

A. Additive drill

dhoobii kapRee laaee.
hooTal-kee
woo

ḳamiizẽẽ bhuulaa.
dhoobii
hooTal-kaa

meerii hindii samjhee.
widyaarthii
aap-kee

sabzii laayaa.
gããw-kaa rahnee-waalaa
raajasthaanii

pataa bhuulii.
laRkii
aap-kii

tumhaarii baat samjhĩĩ.
meem saahab
hooTal-kii

B. Substitution-agreement drill

The washerman couldn't wash the shirt.

(dhoobii) ḳamiiz nahĩĩ dhoo sakaa.
bairaa
meem saahab
woo aurtẽẽ
ḳhaan saahab
dhoobii-kee madad karnee-waalee

C. Substitution-agreement drill

The Sikri guide was able to show all the ruins.

(siikrii-kaa gaaiD) saaree khãDhar dikhaa sakaa.
yahãã-kee aadmii
aanee-jaanee-waalaa
aap-kii laRkiyãã
jaipur-kaa tããgee-waalaa
wahãã-kii gããw-waalii
meem saahab

D. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Did the man forget the name of the palace?	Yes, he forgot.
kyaa saahab mahal-kaa naam bhuul gaee?	hãã, woo bhuul gaee.
kyaa gaaiD-nee mahal dikhaayaa?	us-nee dikhaayaa.
kyaa rikšee-waalaa saahab-koo sTeešan lee calaa?	woo lee calaa.
kyaa saahab-nee rikšee-waalee-koo paisaa diyaa?	unhõõ-nee diyaa.
kyaa widyaarthii apnii kitaabẽẽ bhuul gaee?	woo bhuul gaee.
kyaa doost-nee us-koo kitaab dii?	us-nee dii.
kyaa kulii saahab-kee paas gayaa?	woo gayaa.
kyaa saahab-nee us-koo jhoolee dikhaaee?	unhõõ-nee dikhaaee.
kyaa dukaandaar-nee saahab-kii baat samjhii?	us-nee samjhii.
kyaa wideešii yaatrii-kee paas baiThaa?	woo baiThaa.
kyaa yaatrii-nee wideešii-kee liyee khiRkii khoolii?	us-nee khoolii.

E. Transformation drill: saknaa

Instructor	Class
The porter took out the clothes.	See below.

kulii-nee kapRee nikaal diyee.
saahab-nee tããgaa bulaayaa.
laRkee-nee sabzii ḳhariidii.
meem saahab-nee dhoobii-see sawaal puuchaa.
yaatriyõõ-nee gaaRii pakRii.
sarkaar-nee yahãã-kee loogõõ-koo basaayaa.
tããgee-waalee-nee cããdnii cauk dikhaayaa.
meem saahab-nee aaraam-kaa intizaam kiyaa.
gaaiD-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.
sabzii-waalõõ-nee saarii sabzii beecii.

Class

The porter could take out the clothes.

kulii kapRee nikaal sakaa.
saahab tããgaa bulaa sakee.
laRkaa sabzii ḳhariid sakaa.
meem saahab dhoobii-see sawaal puuch sakĩĩ.
yaatrii gaaRii pakaR sakee.
sarkaar yahãã-kee loogõõ-koo basaa sakii.
tããgee-waalaa cããdnii cauk dikhaa sakaa.
meem saahab aaraam-kaa intizaam kar sakĩĩ.
gaaiD wideešii-kii madad kar sakaa.
sabzii-waalee saarii sabzii beec sakee.

5. kitnaa and kaisaa in exclamations.

Just as kyõõ is used both in questions and when calling to someone, kitnaa and kaisaa may also be used in exclamations.

yee kaisaa ḳhuubsuurat kaam hai.
yee jaalii kitnii acchii banii hai.

In general kitnaa refers to quantity and kaisaa refers to quality. They can be used interchangeably in some contexts but not in others.

A. Substitution-agreement drill: kaisaa

What beautiful work this is!

yee kaisaa ḳhuubsuurat (kaam) hai.
darwaazee
laRkii
imaartẽẽ
diiwaar
darwaazaa
diiwaarẽẽ

B. Substitution-agreement drill: kaisaa

Notice how pretty this street is.

deekhiyee, yee (saRak) kaisii sundar lagtii hai.
diiwaarẽẽ
jaalii
puraanaa baazaar
puraanee makaan
saRkẽẽ

C. Substitution drill: kitnaa

Look how high this building is.

deekhiyee, yee makaan kitnaa (ũũcaa) hai.
puraanaa
baRaa
chooTaa
saaf
ḳhuubsuurat

D. Double substitution drill

How chubby that girl is!

woo (laRkii) kitnii (mooTii) hai.
laRkaa
chooTaa
pagRii-waalaa
dublaa
saahab
lambee

E. Expansion-agreement drill

Frame: How well this is made!

screen	How well this screen is made!
new	How well this new screen is made!

Frame: yee kitnii acchii banii hai.

jaalii	yee jaalii kitnii acchii banii hai.
naii	yee naii jaalii kitnii acchii banii hai.

imaartẽẽ
puraanii

darwaazaa
kaalaa

masjid
ḳhuubsuurat

diiwaarẽẽ
ũũcii

F. Substitution-agreement drill

We don't have such buildings at home.

aisii (imaartẽẽ) hamaaree yahãã nahĩĩ hãĩ.
jaaliyãã
darwaazee
farš
diiwaarẽẽ

G. Chain drill

Two foreigners are talking.

wideešii: How well this new screen is made!
wideešii: We don't have screens like that where I come from.

wideešii: yee naii jaalii kitnii acchii banii hai.
wideešii: aisii jaaliyãã hamaaree yahãã nahĩĩ hãĩ.

wideešii: yee ḳhuubsuurat darwaazaa kitnaa acchaa banaa hai.
wideešii: aisee darwaazee hamaaree yahãã nahĩĩ hãĩ.

6. hootaa hai, hoo rahaa hai, hai

The differences in meaning among the above three verb constructions are illustrated below:

aisee bartan yahãã nahĩĩ hootee.	Such vessels don't exist here.
yahãã kyaa hoo rahaa hai.	What's going on here?
yahãã kyaa hootaa hai.	What (ordinarily) goes on here?
yahãã kyaa hai.	What is here?

When hai is used by itself, it indicates the presence of something without specifying anything about its permanence, or its regularity. hootaa hai implies that something exists or goes on regularly over a period of time. hoo rahaa hai indicates a momentary state or process which is not necessarily permanent and may not be repeated. Note that the regular past of hootaa hai is hootaa thaa or huaa depending on the context. The past of hai is thaa.

yahãã kyaa thaa.	What was here?
yahãã kyaa huaa.	What developed (went on) here?
yahãã kyaa hootaa thaa.	What used to go on here?

A. Substitution drill

What used to happen here?

(yahãã) kyaa hootaa thaa.
siikrii-mẽẽ
hawaa mahal-mẽẽ
taaj mahal-mẽẽ
is puraanee hissee-mẽẽ

B. Conversational response drill

gaahak	dukaandaar
When will there be fresh vegetables?	I have fresh vegetables every day.
taazii sabzii kab hoogii.	meeree paas rooz taazii sabzii hootii hai.
laal saaRiyãã kab hõõgii.	laal saaRiyãã hootii hãĩ.
amriikan maal kab hoogaa.	amriikan maal hoot hai.
pakkee papiitee kab hõõgee.	pakkee papiitee hootee hãĩ.
taazii khurcan kab hoogii.	taazii khurcan hootii hai.
naee Dhang-kaa kurtaa kab hoogaa.	naee Dhang-kaa kurtaa hootaa hai.
acchee kapRee kab hõõgee.	acchee kapRee hootee hãĩ.
taazii miThaaiyãã kab hõõgii.	taazii miThaaiyãã hootii hãĩ.

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What do you assume goes on in a cloth shop?
1st Student: Saris are probably sold.

Instructor: kapRee-kii dukaan-mẽẽ kyaa hootaa hoogaa.
1st Student: saaRiyãã biktii hõõgii.

Instructor: miThaaii-kii dukaan-mẽẽ kyaa hootaa hoogaa.
1st Student: peeRee biktee hõõgee.

D. Substitution-agreement drill

A sari from Benaras is excellent.

(banaarsii saaRii) acchii hootii hai.
mathuraa-kee peeRee
ahamdaabaad-kaa kapRaa
naagpur-kee santree
jaipurii pagRii
bangaal-kee rasgullee
kaanpur-kee capplẽẽ

7. The infinitive plus paRnaa construction.

paRnaa when used in indirect verb constructions after another infinitive is the equivalent of the English 'to be obliged to.' It is used in contexts similar to the caahiyee and hai indirect verb constructions. paRnaa indicates a much stronger sense of obligation or necessity than caahiyee.

paanii-kii kamii hoo gaii, aur usee yahããã-see aagraa jaanaa paRaa.
ab lauTnaa paRtaa hai. mujhee gaaRii pakaRnii hai.

A. Substitution drill

He had to go to Agra.

usee (aagraa jaanaa) paRaa.
siikrii-see jaanaa
makaan banaanaa
duur-see paanii laanaa
šahar basaanaa

B. Substitution-agreement drill

The man had to see Sikri.

saahab-koo (siikrii deekhnii) paRii.
gaaRii pakaRnii
kapRee dhulaanee
gilaaf caRhwaanee
khiRkiyãã khoolnii
kulii bulaanaa
doost-kaa makaan DhũũDhnaa

C. Substitution-agreement drill

I have to study Hindi these days.

aaj kal mujhee (hindii paRhnii) paRtii hai.
apnaa khaanaa banaanaa
sab intizaam karnee
ciTThiyãã likhnii
apnaa maal beecnaa
rooTii banaanii
saaraa khaanaa lee aanaa
bahut paisee deenee

D. Conversational response drill: intransitive verbs

Instructor	Class
Why are you going back to Delhi?	Because I just have to go back.
aap kyõõ dillii lauT rahee hãĩ.	is liyee ki mujhee lauTnaa hii paRtaa hai.
woo wideešii kyõõ aagree jaa rahaa hai.	us-koo jaanaa
woo loog kyõõ Taiksii-see jaa rahee hãĩ.	un-koo jaanaa
ham yahãã-par kyõõ baiTh rahee hãĩ.	hamẽẽ baiThnaa
yee saahab saRak-par kyõõ Thair rahee hãĩ.	un-koo Thairnaa
aap loog kursii-see kyõõ uTh rahee hãĩ.	un-koo uThnaa
woo aadmii kyõõ šahar-mẽẽ ghuum rahaa hai.	us-koo ghuumnaa

E. Conversational response drill: transitive verbs

Instructor	Class
Why is the guide showing the buildings?	Because he just has to show them.
woo gaaiD imaartẽẽ kyõõ dikhaa rahaa hai.	kyõõ kii us-koo dikhaanii paRtii hãĩ.
woo dukaandaar sabzii kyõõ beec rahee hãĩ.	un-koo beecnii paRtii hai.
yee kulii jhoolaa kyõõ rakh rahaa hai.	us-koo rakhnaa paRtaa hai.
aap loog bahut sawaal kyõõ puuch rahee hãĩ.	hamẽẽ puuchnee paRtee hãĩ.
mãĩ bahut jawaab kyõõ dee rahaa hũũ.	aap-koo deenee paRtee hãĩ.
woo laRkiyãã kyõõ kašT dee rahii hãĩ.	un-koo karnaa paRtaa hai.
woo saahab gaaRii kyõõ pakaR rahee hãĩ.	un-koo pakaRnii paRtii hai.
aap loog hindii kyõõ paRh rahee hãĩ.	hamẽẽ paRhnii paRtii hai.

Rapid Response

Group 1

wideešii kis šahar-kee kãDhar deekh rahee hãĩ.
kyaa gaaiD amriikii hai?
buland darwaazaa kis-nee banwaayaa thaa.
siikrii kis šahar-kee paas hai.
siikrii-koo kis-nee basaayaa thaa.
pahlee reegistaan kahãã thaa.
kyaa siikrii hindustaan-kii raajdhaanii hai?
akbar-koo siikrii-see kis šahar-mẽẽ jaanaa paRaa.
kyaa wideešii-nee aagree-mẽẽ laal ḳilaa deekhaa?
wideešii buland darwaazee-kee andar kis imaarat-kii taraf jaatee hãĩ.
wideešii juutõõ-par kyaa caRhwaatee hãĩ.
šaahii masjid-kii diiwaarõõ-par kaisaa kaam banaa hai.
kis ciiz-mẽẽ-see andar-see baahar saaf saaf deekh saktee hãĩ.
waziirõõ-kee saath uupar kaun baiThtaa thaa.
pacciisii kheelnee-kee liyee akbar-nee kyaa banwaaee thee.
caarõõ taraf mahlõõ-mẽẽ kaun rahtee thee.

Group 2

wideešii kis-see baat ciit kar rahee hãĩ.
gaaiD kin ciizõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ jaantaa hai.
aaj kal kis mašhuur imaarat-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.
kyaa ab buland darwaazee-kee paas ujaaR hoo gayaa hai?
paanii-kii kamii kis šahar-mẽẽ hoo gaii thii.
siikrii kis-kii raajdhaanii thii.
akbar-koo siikrii-see aagree kyõõ jaanaa paRaa.
akbar-kaa ḳilaa kis šahar-mẽẽ hai.
šaahii masjid kis imaarat-kee andar hai.
kis imaarat-kee diiwaarõõ-par ḳhuubsuurat kaam banaa hai.
kyaa jaalii-mẽẽ-see saaf saaf dikhtaa hai?
akbar uupar kin-kee saath baiThtaa thaa.
akbar-nee farš-par nišaan kyõõ banwaaee thee.
kyaa mahlõõ-mẽẽ waziirõõ-kee aaraam-kaa sab intizaam thaa.
kyaa siikrii wideešii-koo pasand aaii.

Review Conversations

gaaiD-kee saath

1. A: too yahii hai buland darwaazaa jisee akbar-nee banwaayaa thaa?
B: jii hãã. aaj kal is-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.
A: idhar-kaa hissaa too bilkul ujaaR lagtaa hai.
B: jii hãã, ab too pahlee-kii hii tarah ujaaR hoo gayaa hai.
A: akbar-kii raajdhaanii bhii too yahĩĩ thii?
B: jii hãã, leekin baad-mẽẽ usee aagree jaanaa paRaa.

2. A: yahãã kyaa hootaa thaa.
B: yahãã akbar pacciisii kheeltaa thaa.
A: saamnee-kee mahlõõ-mẽẽ kaun rahtaa thaa.
B: in-mẽẽ akbar-kii raaniyãã rahtii thĩĩ.
A: yee too baRee sundar dikhtee hãĩ.
B: jii hãã, in-mẽẽ un-kee aaraam-kii har ciiz-kaa intizaam thaa.

siikarii-mẽẽ

3. A: yee kaun-sii masjid hai.
B: yahii hai šaahii masjid, jisee akbar-nee banwaayaa thaa.
A: is-kii diiwaarõõ-par bahut ḳhuubsuurat kaam banee hãĩ.
B: jii hãã, in jaaliyõõ-see aap baahar saaf saaf deekh saktee hãĩ.
A: kyaa andar jaa saktee hãĩ?
B: jii hãã leekin pahlee juutõõ-par gilaaf caRhwaanaa paReegaa.

4. A: yahãã kyaa hootaa thaa.
B: yahãã akbar apnee waziirõõ-kee saath baiThtaa thaa.
A: yee saamnee too sab reegistaan maaluum paRtaa hai.
B: reegistaan too yahãã pahlee bhii thaa, leekin akbar-nee isee basaayaa.
A: us samay too yahãã kaafii loog rahtee thee na?
B: jii hãã, leekin ab too siikrii bhii ujaaR hoo gaii hai.

baat ciit

5. **A:** kyõõ bhaaii gaaiD, raaniyõõ-kee mahal kidhar thee.
B: udhar, saamnee caarõõ taraf raaniyõõ-kee hii mahal hãĩ.
A: mahal-kee saamnee-waalii imaarat-mẽẽ kyaa hootaa thaa.
B: wahãã akbar aur us-kee waziir baiThtee thee.
A: yahãã kyaa hoo rahaa hai.
B: makaan-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.

6. **A:** aap kal kahãã gayaa thee šarmaa jii.
B: zaraa siikrii-tak gayaa thaa.
A: aap-koo kaisii lagii.
B: ab too sab khãDhar hoo gayaa hai.
A: ab too kaafii ujaaR saa lagtaa hoogaa.
B: woo akbar-kee samay-mẽẽ hii ujaaR hoo gayaa thaa.

Unit IV Part C

Conversation

1 iid-kaa tyoohaar.
2 lakhnauu, aasafii masjid.

---

3 hindustaanii: yahii hai, aasafii masjid. kyaa aap yee paRh saktii hãĩ?
4 wideešii: jii nahĩĩ, abhii ham-nee itnaa nahĩĩ siikhaa.
5 hindustaanii: yahãã likhaa hai, iid mubaarak.
6 is-kaa matlab hai, aap-koo iid-kii badhaaii.
7 wideešii: saamnee too kaafii bhiiR maaluum hootii hai.
8 hindustaanii: yee saaree musalmaanõõ-kaa ḳhaas tyoohaar hai.
9 baccee, buuRhee, jawaan, sab yahãã jamaa hoo gaee hãĩ.
10 wideešii: yahãã loog haath mũh kyõõ dhoo rahee hãĩ.
11 hindustaanii: namaaz-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.

---

12 wideešii: kyaa aap in loogõõ-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantii hãĩ?
13 hindustaanii: jii hãã. šaayad aap-nee pahcaanaa nahĩĩ. woo rahee aap-kee doost, miir saahab.
14 wideešii: aadaab arz miir saahab. is baccii-kaa kyaa naam hai.
15 miir saahab: aadaab arz. salmaa naam hai is-kaa.
16 wideešii: baRii pyaarii baccii hai. yee bhii namaaz paRhnee aaii hai kyaa?
17 miir saahab: nahĩĩ, yee too sirf tamaašaa deekhnee aaii hai.
18 ab ijaazat diijiyee, namaaz šuruu hoonee-waalii hai.
19 wideešii: acchaa, sab loog eek saath khaRee hoo-kar namaaz paRhtee hãĩ.

---

20 hindustaanii: deekhiyee, namaaz ḳhatam hoo gaii.
21 sab loog galee mil rahee hãĩ. yee iid milnaa kahaa jaataa hai.
22 wideešii: yee too baRaa acchaa rawaaj hai. hamaaree yahãã aisaa nahĩĩ hootaa.
23 hindustaanii: yee jhuulee deekhiyee, jis-kee liyee yee saaree baccee aaee hãĩ.
24 wideešii: hãã, meeree ḳhayaal-mẽẽ baccõõ-kee kheel too saarii duniyaa-mẽẽ eek see hãĩ.
25 yee khilaunee too baRee acchee dikhtee hãĩ. kis ciiz-kee banee hãĩ.
26 hindustaanii: miTTii-kee, yee yahãã-kii ḳhaas ciizẽẽ hãĩ.

Vocabulary and Translation of the Conversation

	iid	Eid (f)
	tyoohaar	festival (m)
1	iid-kaa tyoohaar.	Eid Festival.
	lakhnauu	Lucknow (m)
	aasafii masjid	Asafi Mosque
2	lakhnauu, aasafii masjid.	Lucknow, Asafi Mosque.
	yahii	yee hii
3 H:	yahii hai, aasafii masjid. kyaa aap yee paRh saktii hãĩ?	This is Asafi Mosque. Can you read that?
	siikhnaa	to learn
4 W:	jii nahĩĩ, abhii ham-nee itnaa nahĩĩ siikhaa.	No, I haven't learned that much yet.
	iid mubaarak	Happy Eid
5 H:	yahãã likhaa hai, iid mubaarak.	It says "Eid Mubarak."
	matlab	meaning, sense (m)
	badhaaii	felicitations
6 H:	is-kaa matlab hai, aap-koo iid-kii badhaaii.	That means "Best wishes for Eid."
	bhiiR	crowd (f)
	maaluum hoonaa	to seem
7 W:	saamnee too kaafii bhiiR maaluum hootii hai.	There seems to be quite a crowd in front of the mosque.
	musalmaan	Moslem (m)
8 H:	yee saaree musalmaanõõ-kaa ḵhaas tyoohaar hai.	This is the main festival for all Moslems.
	baccaa	child, baby (m)
	buuRhaa	old, old man (m)
	jawaan	young adult (m)
	jamaa	assembled (adv)
	jamaa hoonaa	to be gathered, to congregate
9 H:	baccee, buuRhee, jawaan, sab yahãã jamaa hoo gaee hãĩ.	Young and old, all have come together here.
	mũh	mouth, face (m)
	haath mũh	hands and face
10 W:	yahãã loog haath mũh kyõõ dhoo rahee hãĩ.	Why are these people washing their hands and faces here?

	namaaz	Moslem prayers (f)
	taiyaarii	preparations
	taiyaarii karnaa	to make preparations
11 H:	namaaz-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.	They're getting ready to pray.
	in loogõõ-mẽẽ	among these people
12 W:	kyaa aap in loogõõ-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantii hãĩ.	Do you know anyone among these people?
	pahcaanaa	to recognize
	miir	Mir
13 H:	jii hãã. šaayad aap-nee pahcaanaa nahĩĩ. woo rahee aap-kee doost, miir saahab.	Yes, I guess you didn't recognize him. There's your friend, Mir Sahib.
	aadaab arz	greetings, hello (Moslem)
	baccii	little girl
14 W:	aadaab arz miir saahab. is baccii-kaa kyaa naam hai.	Hello, Mir Sahib. What's the name of this little girl?
	salmaa	Salma (name)
15 M:	aadaab arz. salmaa naam hai is-kaa.	Adab arz. Her name is Salma.
	pyaaraa	lovely, dear
	namaaz paRhnaa	to pray (Moslems)
16 W:	baRii pyaarii baccii hai. yee bhii namaaz paRhnee aaii hai kyaa?	She's a very lovely little girl. Has she come to pray too?
	tamaašaa	fun, show
17 M:	nahĩĩ, yee too sirf tamaašaa deekhnee aaii hai.	No, she just came to watch the fun.
	ijaazat	permission (f)
	ijaazat diijiyee	allow me (to leave)
18 M:	ab ijaazat diijiyee, namaaz šuruu hoonee-waalii hai.	Now, if you'll excuse me, Namaz is about to begin.
	eek saath	all together (adv)
	khaRaa hoo-kar	standing up
19 W:	acchaa, sab loog eek saath khaRee hoo-kar namaaz paRhtee hãĩ.	They stand up all together and then recite the prayers.
	ḳhatam hoonaa	to be finished
20 H:	deekhiyee, namaaz ḳhatam hoo gaii.	Look, Namaz is over.
	kahaa jaanaa	to be called
	kahaa jaataa hai	is being called
	galaa	throat, neck
	galee milnaa	to embrace
21 H:	sab loog galee mil rahee hãĩ. yee iid milnaa kahaa jaataa hai.	They're all embracing each other.

rawaaj	custom (m)
22 W: yee too baRaa acchaa rawaaj hai. hamaaree yahãã aisaa nahĩĩ hootaa.	That's a very good custom. We don't have anything like that.
jis-kee liyee	for which reason
23 H: yee jhuulee deekhiyee, jis-kee liyee yee saaree baccee aaee hãĩ.	Look at these swings; that's the reason all these children have come.
ḳhayaal	opinion (m)
meeree ḳhayaal-mẽẽ	in my opinion
kheel	game (m)
duniyaa	world (f, sg)
eek saa	same (adj)
24 W: hãã, meeree ḳhayaal-mẽẽ baccõõ kee kheel too saarii duniyaa-mẽẽ eek see hãĩ.	Yes, I think children's games are the same all over the world.
khilaunaa	toy
kis ciiz-kaa	of what
25 W: yee khilaunee too baRee acchee dikhtee hãĩ. kis ciiz-kee banee hãĩ.	These toys look very good. What are they made of?
miTTii	clay
26 H: miTTii-kee, yee yahãã-kii ḳhaas ciizẽẽ hãĩ.	Clay; they're a local specialty.

Cultural Notes

Lukhnow, the capital of U.P., is one of the largest and most modern administrative centers of North India. In former times it was the capital of the Nawab-Wazir of Oudh. Nominally a high Moghul court official, the Nawab became virtually an independent satrap during the course of the eighteenth century as Moghul power waned. The city has been known as a center of Urdu learning, poetry and culture since that time. The Moghuls and their officers established a reputation as great patrons of literature and art; poets able to compose verses on the spot for any court occasion were considered ornaments to the Nawab's court.

Lukhnow's famous buildings, the imaambaaRaa (Nawab's palace) and the nearby aasafii masjid, form a complex of buildings slightly outside the city. The palace is now used on festive occasions such as the iid festival which closes raamzaan, the Islamic holy month of fasting. On this day, prayers are read in the mosque, new clothes are worn, and gifts and greetings are exchanged by Muslims. The traditional costumes which one sees during this spring festival recall the splendor of the Nawab's court. Iid is usually the occasion for a carnival, complete with country-made merry-go-rounds, novelty shops and food stands.

The greeting aadaab arz is given in situations of contact between Muslims and non-Muslims. Muslims often use salaam alaikum when they greet other Muslims. To a Hindu one says namastee, or, more formally, namaskar.

Word Study

1. Related word pairs

siikhnaa	to learn	taiyaar	ready (adj)
paRhnaa	to read, study, pray	taiyaarii	readiness
namaaz (f)	Moslem prayer	namaaz paRhnaa	to pray (Moslems)
puujaa (f)	Hindu prayer	puujaa karnaa	to pray (Hindus)

2. Greetings

namastee	Hindus among each other and to foreigners
namaskaar	Hindus, formal
aadaab arz	Moslems to others and others to Moslems
salaam	Old-fashioned servants to their superiors

The above greetings are used in the morning, afternoon and evening when meeting someone as well as when saying goodbye. Greetings are not commonly used towards strangers on the street or in shops.

3. Terms for parts of the body

badan	body	(m)	mũh	mouth, face	(m)
haath	hand	(m)	ããkh	eye	(f)
unglii	finger		naak	nose	(f)
pããw	foot	(m)	kaan	ear	(m)

4. Terms for human beings

baccaa (ii)	a child up to four or five
laRkaa (ii)	a child up to about fifteen
jawaan	a young adult (m/f)
buuRhaa	an old man
buuRhii	an old woman

5. Raw materials

lakRii	wood
soonaa	gold
cããdii	silver
loohaa	iron
patthar	stone (m)
piital	brass (f)
miTTii	clay
kããc	glass (m)

6. Personal ornament

chuuRii	bangle, bracelet
maalaa	necklace
Tikkaa	beauty spot

7. Moslem names

Men	Women
saliim	salmaa
iḳbaal	marjaan
maajid	lailaa
aziim	širĩĩ

Grammar Drills

1.1 Pattern 1

A. Substitution-agreement drill

There seems to be quite a crowd.

too kaafii (bhiiR) maaluum hootii hai.
loog
jawaan laRkee
buuRhee aadmii
bacciyãã
pagRii-waalee

B. Substitution drill

Do you know anyone among these people?

kyaa aap (in loogõõ)-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantee hãĩ?
in jawaanõõ
un buuRhõõ
un baccõõ
is bhiiR
in pagRii-waalõõ
in jawaan laRkiyõõ

C. Chain drill

hindustaanii: There seems to be quite a crowd over there.
wideešii: Do you know anyone in the crowd?

hindustaanii: udhar kaafii bhiiR maaluum hootii hai.
wideešii: kyaa aap us bhiiR-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantee hãĩ.

hindustaanii: udhar kaafii musalmaan maaluum hootee hãĩ.
wideešii: kyaa aap in musalmaanõõ-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantee hãĩ.

1.2 Pattern 2

A. Substitution-agreement drill

There's your friend, Mr. Mir.

woo rahee aap-kee doost, (miir saahab).
salmaa
salmaa saahibaa
k̤haan saahab
marjaan saahibaa
lailaa saahibaa
lailaa
saliim saahab
saliim
širĩĩ saahibaa
širĩĩ

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
There's your friend, Salma.	I didn't recognize her.
woo rahii aap-kii doost, salmaa.	mãĩ-nee us-koo pahcaanaa nahĩĩ.
woo rahee aap-kee doost, miir saahab.	un-koo
woo rahaa aap-kaa doost, saliim.	us-koo
woo rahĩĩ aap-kii doost, širĩĩ saahibaa.	un-koo
woo rahee aap-kee doost, saliim saahab.	un-koo
woo rahii aap-kii doost, lailaa.	us-koo
woo rahaa aap-kaa doost, ḳhaan.	us-koo
woo rahĩĩ aap-kii doost, marjaan saahibaa.	un-koo

C. Chain drill

wideešii: Do you know anyone among these people?
hindustaanii: Yes, there's your friend, Mir sahib.
wideešii: I didn't recognize him.

wideešii: kyaa aap in loogõõ-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantee hãĩ?
hindustaanii: jii hãã, woo rahee aap-kee doost, miir saahab.
wideešii: mãĩ-nee un-koo pahcaanaa nahĩĩ.

wideešii: kyaa aap in baccõõ-mẽẽ kisii-koo jaantee hãĩ?
hindustaanii: jii hãã, woo rahii aap-kii doost, salmaa.
wideešii: mãĩ-nee us-koo pahcaanaa nahĩĩ.

1.3 Pattern 3

A. Substitution drill

These toys look very good.

yee khilaunee too baRee (acchee) dikhtee hãĩ.
sundar
ḳhuubsuurat
saaf
naee
puraanee

B. Substitution-agreement drill

These buildings seem very old.

yee (imaartẽẽ) too baRii puraanii dikhtii hãĩ.
khilaunee
bastii
banglaa
gaaRiyãã
hindustaanii-kee rawaaj
baccõõ-kee kheel

C. Double substitution-agreement drill

Lucknow seems to be very old.

(lakhnauu) too baRaa (puraanaa) dikhtaa hai.
dillii
sundar
aasafii masjid
k̤huubsuurat
salmaa
pyaarii
aap-kaa baccaa
dublaa

1.4 Pattern 4

A. Substitution-agreement drill

What are these toys made of?

yee (khilaunee) kis ciiz-kee banee hãĩ.
khilaunaa
miThaaii
naee bartan
meezẽẽ
puraanaa darwaazaa
jaalii

B. Double substitution drill

These toys are made of clay.

yee (khilaunee) (miTTii)-kee banee hãĩ.
bartan
lakRii
kursiyãã
loohee
bartan
piital
chuuRiyãã
soonee

C. Chain drill

Use any appropriate answer.

Instructor:	chuuRiyãã	bangles
1st Student:	chuuRiyãã kis ciiz-kii banii hãĩ.	What are bangles made of?
2nd Student:	kããc-kii.	Of glass.

Instructor:	khilaunee
2nd Student:	khilaunee kis ciiz-kee banee hãĩ.
3rd Student:	lakRii-kee.

Instructor:
farš
bartan
meezẽẽ
diiwaar
makaan
maalaa
kursiyãã
jaaliyãã
chat

D. Chain drill

Instructor: screen
wideešii: This screen looks very pretty. What is it made of?
hindustaanii: Of silver.

Instructor: jaalii
wideešii: yee jaalii too baRii sundar hai. kis ciiz-kii banii hai.
hindustaanii: cããdii-kii.

Instructor: chuuRiyãã
wideešii: yee chuuRiyãã too baRii ḳhuubsuurat hãĩ. kis ciiz-kii banii hãĩ.
hindustaanii: soonee-kii.

Instructor: Continue with appropriate items in Drill C above, using either singular or plural.

1.5 Pattern 5

A. Substitution drill

That's the mosque facing us isn't it?

yahii (saamnee) masjid, hai na?
baaĩĩ taraf
baaẽẽ haath-par
idhar
aagee
saRak-kee kinaaree

B. Conversational response

Instructor — Class

The mosque is up ahead, isn't it? — See below.

masjid aagee, hai na?
masjid daahinii taraf, hai na?
masjid daahinee haath-par, hai na?
masjid aglii saRak-kee kinaaree, hai na?
masjid saRak-kee us taraf, hai na?
masjid saRak-kee baaẽẽ haath-par, hai na?

Class

No, it's back there.

nahĩĩ, udhar, piichee hai.
baaĩĩ taraf hai.
baaẽẽ haath-par hai.
pichlii saRak-kee kinaaree hai.
saRak-kee is taraf hai.
saRak-kee daahinee haath-par hai.

1.6 Pattern 6

A. Substitution drill

I think these customs are good.

(meeree) ḳhayaal-mẽẽ yee rawaaj acchee hãĩ.
aap-kee
wideešii-kee
us-kee
miir saahab-kee
un-kee
hamaaree
tumhaaree

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Do you think these customs are very good?	See below.

aap-kee ḳhayaal-mẽẽ kyaa yee rawaaj acchee hãĩ?
saahab-kee ḳhayaal-mẽẽ kyaa yee jaalii acchii hai?
salmaa-kee ḳhayaal-mẽẽ kyaa yee khilaunaa acchaa hai?
wideešii-kee ḳhayaal-mẽẽ kyaa kheel acchee hãĩ?
meem saahab-kee ḳhayaal-mẽẽ kyaa hindustaanii chuuRiyãã acchii hãĩ?
aap loogõõ-kee ḳhayaal-mẽẽ kyaa yee klaas acchii hai?

Class

Yes, that's what I think.

hãã, meeraa ḳhayaal yahii hai.
un-kaa
us-kaa
us-kaa
un-kaa
hamaaraa

1.7 Pattern 7

A. Substitution-agreement drill

I've never seen the Asafi Mosque.

mãĩ-nee (aasafii masjid) kabhii nahĩĩ deekhii.
akbar-kaa ḳilaa
buland darwaazaa
iid-kii namaaz
miir saahab-kii baccii
salmaa-kee khilaunee
siikrii-kee khãDhar
raajistaan-kii raajdhaanii

B. Chain drill

Instructor: Asafi Mosque.
1st Student: What's the Asafi Mosque like?
2nd Student: I've never seen the Asafi Mosque.

Instructor: aasafii masjid
1st Student: aasafii masjid kaisii hai.
2nd Student: aasafii masjid nãĩ-nee kabhii nahĩĩ deekhii.

Instructor: akbar-kaa ḳilaa
2nd Student: akbar-kaa ḳilaa kaisaa hai.
3rd Student: akbar-kaa ḳilaa mãĩ-nee kabhii nahĩĩ deekhaa.

Instructor: Continue with the substitutions in Drill A.

1.8 Pattern 8

A. Substitution-agreement drill

Prayers are finished.

(namaaz) ḳhatam hoo gaii.
kaam
tamaašaa
klaas
hamaaraa kheel
puujaa
tyoohaar
baatẽẽ

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Have the prayers ended?	Yes, they just finished.
kyaa namaaz ḳhatam hoo gaii?	jii hãã, abhii ḳhatam huii.
kyaa kheel ḳhatam hoo gaee?	huee.
kyaa batẽẽ ḳhatam hoo gaĩĩ.	huĩĩ.
kyaa klaas ḳhatam hoo gaii?	huii.
kyaa tamaašaa ḳhatam hoo gayaa?	huaa.
kyaa sair ḳhatam hoo gaii?	huii.
kyaa tamaašee ḳhatam hoo gaee?	huee.
kyaa puujaa ḳhatam hoo gaii?	huii.

1.9 Pattern 9

A. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Eid Mubarak is written here.	See below.
yahãã likhaa hai, iid mubaarak.	
yahãã likhaa hai, darwaazaa band hai.	
yahãã likhaa hai, ḳilaa khulaa hai.	
yahãã likhaa hai, gaaRii aaj nahĩĩ jaatii hai.	
yahãã likhaa hai, rasgullee aaj nahĩĩ jaatii hai.	
yahãã likhaa hai, rasgullee aaj nahĩĩ miltee hãĩ.	
yahãã likhaa hai, yahãã madraasii saaRiyãã biktii hãĩ.	

Class

What does Eid Mubarak mean?

iid mubaarak, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
darwaazaa band hai,
ḳilaa khulaa hai,
gaaRii aaj nahĩĩ jaatii hai,
rasgullee aaj nahĩĩ miltee hãĩ,
yahãã madraasii saaRiyãã biktii hãĩ,

B. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What does Eid Mubarak mean?
1st Student: It means 'Best wishes for Eid.'

Instructor: iid mubaarak, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
1st Student: is-kaa matlab hai, aap-koo iid-kii badhaaii.

Instructor: darwaazaa band hai, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
2nd Student: is-kaa matlab hai, aap andar nahĩĩ jaa ṣaktee hãĩ.

Instructor: Continue with the responses in Drill A.

2. Complex verbs

Several word verb phrases consisting of a noun, adjective or adverb followed by karnaa or hoonaa are called complex verb constructions. karnaa and hoonaa serve as auxiliaries in these constructions and are inflected for tense and mood while the first element remains invariant.

us-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.	It is being repaired.
woo namaaz-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.	They are getting ready for prayers.
tumhaaraa hii intizaar kar rahii thii.	I was waiting just for you.
ḳamiiz-koo bilkul saaf karẽẽgee.	I'll clean up the shirt completely.
khiRkii band karũũgaa.	I'll close the window.

In the first three constructions the thing that undergoes the action is followed by a form of -kaa. In others it is treated like the object of a simple one word verb and appears either in the direct case or with -koo. Constructions of the first kind function grammatically as noun constructions which must be preceded by a -kaa phrase. Those of the second type are in every way similar to single word verbs. Here are examples of the complex verb constructions learned so far in their karnaa form. The difference between the karnaa and hoonaa constructions will be explained in the next section.

buland darwaazee-kii marammat kar rahee hãĩ.	They are fixing the Buland Darwaza.
namaaz-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.	They are getting ready for prayer.
dhoobii-kii madad kar rahee hãĩ.	They are helping the dhobi.
makaan-kii taalaš kar rahee hãĩ.	They are looking for the house.
un-kee aaraam-kaa intizaam kar rahee hãĩ.	They are making arrangements for their comfort.
meeraa intizaar kar rahee hãĩ.	They are waiting for me.
klaas šuruu kar rahee hãĩ.	They are starting the class.
klaas ḳhatam kar rahee hãĩ.	They are ending the class.
us khiRkii-koo band kar rahee hãĩ.	They are closing that window.
ham-koo yaad kar rahee hãĩ.	They are remembering us.

loogõõ-koo jamaa kar rahee hãĩ.	They are assembling the people.
is-baat-koo maaluum kar rahee hãĩ.	They are finding out about this matter.
ḳamiiz-koo saaf kar rahee hãĩ.	They are cleaning the shirt.

Complex verb constructions are extremely frequent in Hindi. They are used to express a number of actions such as 'close,' 'fix' etc. which in English are rendered by simple words. They also serve as a favorite means of adapting English loan words to colloquial Hindi:

is-koo paališ karnaa. Polish it.

A. Substitution drill

The lady is waiting for the washerman.

meem saahab (dhoobii)-kaa intizaar kar rahii hãĩ.
bairee
apnii baccii
taamaašee
kheel
buuRhee loogõõ
jawaanõõ

B. Substitution drill

They're getting ready for prayer.

woo (namaaz)-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.
namaaz paRhnee
puujaa karnee
urduu siikhnee
kheel kheelnee
khilaunee ḳhariidnee

C. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: Who helped the foreigner in Chandni Chauk?
1st Student: The passerby helped her.

Instructor: cããdnii cauk-mẽẽ kis-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.
1st Student: aanee-jaanee-waalee-nee us-kii madad kii.

Instructor: nainiitaal-mẽẽ kis-nee saahab-kii madad kii.
2nd Student: moocii-nee us-kii madad kii.

Instructor: swis hooTal-mẽẽ pahlii baar kis-nee meem saahab-kii madad kii.
swis hooTal-mẽẽ duusrii baar kis-nee us-kii madad kii.
aagree-kii saRak-par kis-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.
dillii-kee sTeešan-par kis-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.
gaaRii-kee andar kis-nee us-kii madad kii.
siikrii-mẽẽ kis-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.
jaipur-mẽẽ kis-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.
aasafii masjid-kee paas kis-nee wideešii-kii madad kii.

D. Chain drill

Repeat Drill C as a chain drill.

E. Individual response drill

Instructor: What did people get ready for in the Asafi Mosque?
1st Student: They got ready for prayers.

Instructor: aasafii masjid-mẽẽ loogõõ-nee kis ciiz-kii taiyaarii kii?
1st Student: unhõõ-nee namaaz-kii taiyaarii kii.

Instructor: akbar-nee raaniyõõ-kee liyee kis ciiz-kaa intizaam kiyaa.
2nd Student: us-nee un-kee aaraam-kaa intizaam kiyaa.

Instructor: siikrii-mẽẽ loogõõ-nee kis-kii marammat kii.
naii bastii-mẽẽ laRkee-nee kis-kii taalaaš kii.
gaaRii-mẽẽ yaatrii-nee kis-kii madad kii.
hooTal-mẽẽ meem saahab-nee kis-kaa intizaar kiyaa.
nainiitaal-mẽẽ moocii-nee kis-kii marammat kii.
jaipur-mẽẽ wideešii-nee kahãã sair kii.
aagree-mẽẽ wideešii-nee kahãã sair kii.

F. Substitution drill

Our teacher began to teach Hindi yesterday.

hamaaree Tiicar-nee kal (hindii paRhaanaa) šuruu kiyaa.
puujaa karnaa
sawaal puuchnaa
hindii likhnaa
jawaab deenaa
kaam karnaa

G. Substitution drill

Repeat Drill F using ḳhatam kiyaa instead of šuruu kiyaa.

Our teacher finished teaching Hindi yesterday.

hamaaree Tiicar-nee kal (hindii paRhaanaa) ḳhatam kiyaa.

H. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
When will they sell saris?	They will begin to sell saris tomorrow.
saaRiyãã woo kab beecẽẽgee.	kal saaRiyãã beecnaa šuruu karẽẽgee.
namaaz woo kab paRhẽẽgee.	namaaz paRhnaa
kheel woo kab kheelẽẽgee.	kheel kheelnaa
puujaa woo kab karẽẽgee.	puujaa karnaa
imaartẽẽ woo kab dikhaaẽẽgee.	imaartẽẽ dikhaanaa
reegistaan-koo woo kab basaaẽẽgee.	reegistaan-koo basaanaa
us makaan-koo woo kab banaaẽẽgee.	us-makaan-koo banaanaa
dukaanẽẽ woo kab lagaaẽẽgee.	dukaanẽẽ lagaanaa

I. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: To fix shoes. What does that mean?
1st Student: It means to repair shoes.

Instructor: juutee Thiik karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
1st Student: is-kaa matlab hai, juutõõ-kii marammat karnaa.

Instructor: us darwaazee-koo Thiik karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
2nd Student: is-kaa matlab hai, us darwaazee-kii marammat karnaa.

Instructor: us gaaRii-koo Thiik karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
kursii Thiik karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
un bartanõõ-koo Thiik karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.

Continue with other things that can be fixed.

J. Individual conversational response drill

Repeat Drill I in reverse.

Instructor: juutõõ-kii marammat karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
1st Student: is-kaa matlab hai, juutõõ-koo Thiik karnaa.

K. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What does 'to look for a house' mean?
1st Student: It means 'to search for a house.'

Instructor: makaan DhũũDhnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
1st Student: is-kaa matlab hai, makaan-kii taalaaš karnaa.

Instructor: dukaan DhũũDhnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
kooThii
saRak

Continue with other appropriate nouns.

L. Individual conversational response drill

Repeat Drill K in reverse.

Instructor: makaan-kii taalaaš karnaa, is-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
1st Student: is-kaa matlab hai, makaan DhũũDhnaa.

3. Transitive and intransitive forms of complex verbs

Complex verbs with karnaa are transitive. They have intransitive equivalents with hoonaa as the auxiliary.

klaas šuruu kartaa hai. He starts the class.
klaas šuruu hootii hai. The class starts.

The difference between pairs such as šuruu karnaa and šuruu hoonaa is similar to that between beecnaa and biknaa. All of the complex verb constructions listed in the previous sections have equivalents with hoonaa.

Some complex verb constructions also appear in a third form with hai as the auxiliary. Thus we have:

woo darwaazaa band kartaa hai.	He closes the door.
darwaazaa aaj band hootaa hai.	The door is regularly closed today.
darwaazaa abhii band hai.	The door is closed now (but will be opened soon).

A. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Is the store closed?	Yes, it's always closed at night.
kyaa dukaan band hai?	hãã, raat-mẽẽ hameešaa band hootii hai.
kyaa TikaT ghar band hai?	band hootaa hai.
kyaa taaj mahal khulaa hai?	khulaa hootaa hai.
kyaa siikrii khulii hai?	khulii hootii hai.
kyaa hooTal khulee hãĩ.	khulee hootee hãĩ.
kyaa dukaanẽẽ band hãĩ?	band hootii hãĩ.

B. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Does the taxi driver know the road?	See below.

kyaa Taiksii Draaiwar-koo raastaa maaluum hai?
kyaa gaaiD-koo ḳhaas jaghẽẽ maaluum hãĩ?
kyaa dukaandaar-koo daam maaluum hai?
kyaa dhoobii-koo kapRee maaluum hãĩ?
kyaa kulii-koo gaaRii maaluum hai.
kyaa rikšee-waalee-koo hooTal maaluum hãĩ?

Class

Yes, they always know the road?

hãã, un-koo raastaa hameešaa maaluum hootaa hai.
ḳhaas jaghẽẽ hameešaa maaluum hootii hãĩ.
daam hameešaa maaluum hootaa hai.
kapRee hameešaa maaluum hootee hãĩ.
gaaRii hameešaa maaluum hootii hai.
hooTal hameešaa maaluum hootee hãĩ.

C. Substitution-agreement drill

The Buland Darwaza is being repaired.

(buland darwaazee-kii marammat) hoo rahii hai.
namaaz-kii taiyaarii
dhoobii-kaa intizaar
makaan-kii taalaaš
aaraam-kaa intizaam
dhoobii-kii madad

D. Substitution-agreement drill

Class is beginning.

(klaas šuruu) hoo rahii hai.
loog jamáa
baatẽẽ maaluum
kurtaa saaf
juutee Thiik
khiRkiyãã band
darwaazee khulee

E. Chain drill

Give answers like those in Drills C and D above.

Instructor: In the Asafi Mosque.
1st Student: What is going on in the Asafi Mosque?
2nd Student: People are gathering.

Instructor: aasafii masjid-mẽẽ
1st Student: aasafii masjid-mẽẽ kyaa hoo rahaa hai.
2nd Student: loog jammaa hoo rahee hãĩ.

Instructor: siikrii-mẽẽ
2nd Student: siikrii-mẽẽ kyaa hoo rahaa hai.
3rd Student: buland darwaazee-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.

Instructor: nainiitaal-kii saRak-par
duun ekspres-kee andar.
swis hooTal-kee kamree-kee andar
naii bastii-kii saRkõõ-par
dhoobii-kee ghar-mẽẽ
is klaas-mẽẽ

F. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
People are getting ready for prayers.	Preparations for prayers are going on.
loog namaaz-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.	namaaz-kii taiyaarii hoo rahii hai.
aadmii dhoobii-kii madad kar rahaa hai.	dhoobii-kii madad hoo rahii hai.
laRkaa makaan-kii taalaaš kar rahaa hai.	makaan-kii taalaaš hoo rahii hai.
sarkaarii loog loogõõ-koo jammaa kar rahee hãĩ.	loog jammaa hoo rahee hãĩ.
widyaarthii baatẽẽ yaad kar rahee hãĩ.	baatẽẽ yaad hoo rahii hãĩ.
saahab meem saahab-kaa intizaar kar rahee hãĩ.	meem saahab-kaa intizaar hoo rahaa hai.
Tiicar klaas ḳhatam kar rahee hãĩ.	klaas ḳhatam hoo rahii hai.
yaatrii jhoolaa band kar rahaa hai.	jhoolaa band hoo rahaa hai.

G. Individual transformation drill

Instructor: Preparations for prayers are going on.
1st Student: The Moslem is getting ready for prayers.

Instructor: namaaz-kii taiyaarii hoo rahii hai.
1st Student: musulmaan namaaz-kii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.

Instructor: Continue with the class responses in Drill F.

H. Transformation drill

Instructor	Class
People got ready for prayers.	Preparations for prayers were made.
loogõõ-nee namaaz-kii taiyaarii kii.	namaaz-kii taiyaarii huii.
aadmii-nee dhoobii-kii madad kii.	dhoobii-kii madad huii.
laRkee-nee makaan-kii taalaaš kii.	makaan-kii taalaaš huii.
sarkaarii loogõõ-nee loogõõ-koo jammaa kiyaa.	loog jammaa huee.
widyaarthiyõõ-nee baatẽẽ yaad kĩĩ.	baatẽẽ yaad huĩĩ.
Tiicar-nee klaas ḳhatam kii.	klaas ḳhatam huii.
yaatrii-nee jhoolaa band kiyaa.	jhoolaa band huaa.

I. Individual transformation drill

Instructor: Preparations for prayers were made.
1st Student: Miir Sahib got ready for prayers.

Instructor: namaaz-kii taiyaarii kii gaii.
1st Student: miir saahab-nee namaaz-kii taiyaarii kii.

Instructor: Continue with the class responses in Drill H.

4. The particle saa

saa (ee, ii) which combines with kaun to form kaun saa is a particle which may occur after any noun, adjective or adverb.

woo mahal saa dikhtaa hai.	It looks like a palace.
acchaa saa lagtaa hai.	It seems quite nice.
udhar bahut see loog hai.	There are quite a few people there.

Grammatically saa compounds behave like adjectives. When modifying nouns they agree with the following noun in number and gender. They may also serve as independent masculine or feminine nouns, in which case the ending of saa is determined by the gender of the person it refers to.

laRkaa saa lagtaa hai.	He seems like a boy.
laRkii sii lagtii hai.	She seems like a girl.
laRkii saa lagtaa hai.	He seems like a girl.

When saa is used with adjectives, the resulting compound sometimes has a slightly negative connotation. Thus acchaa saa may mean 'quite nice, but it could be better.'

A. Substitution drill

This building looks like a palace.

yee makaan too kooii (mahal) saa dikhtaa hai.
kooThii
dukaan
ghar

B. Substitution drill

This man seems to be some kind of a shopkeeper.

yee aadmii too kooii (dukaandaar) saa lagtaa hai.
saahab
laRkaa
moocii
bairaa
wideešii

C. Substitution-agreement drill

This gentleman seems to be some kind of foreigner.

yee (saahab) too kooii wideešii see lagtee hãĩ.
bairaa
laRkii
meem saahab
rikšee-waalaa
pagRii-waalee
tããgee-waalaa
laRkiyãã

D. Additive-agreement drill

Add a form of saa.

Instructor	Class
A lot of people live in the old section.	See below.

puraanii bastii-mẽẽ bahut loog rahtee hãĩ.
puraanii bastii-mẽẽ bahut laRkiyãã rahtii hãĩ.
puraanii bastii-mẽẽ bahut tããgee-waalee rahtee hãĩ.
saahab-kee paas bhaaRii jhoolaa hai.
saahab-kee paas bhaaRii kursii hai.
saahab-kee paas bhaaRii bakas hãĩ.
usii saRak-mẽẽ garam paanii miltaa hai.
usii saRak-mẽẽ garam rooTiyãã miltii hãĩ.
usii saRak-mẽẽ garam rasgullee miltee hãĩ.

Class

Quite a few people live in the old section.

....bahut see loog....
....bahut sii laRkiyãã....
....bahut see tããgee-waalee....
....bhaaRii saa jhoolaa....
....bhaaRii sii kursii....
....bhaaRii see bakas....
....garam saa paanii....
....garam sii rooTiyãã....
....garam see rasgullee....

5. -aa participle plus jaanaa constructions

This construction may be formed with all transitive verbs. It consists of an -aa participle followed by inflected forms of jaanaa which here serves as an auxiliary.

woo kis liyee banaaee gaee hãĩ.
yee iid milnaa kahaa jaataa hai.

jaanaa may appear in any of the various tenses and mood forms.

woo kis liyee banaayaa gayaa.	What was it being made for?
woo kis liyee banaayaa jaataa hai.	What is it being made for?
woo kis liyee banaayaa jaaeegaa.	What will it be made for?
woo kis liyee banaayaa jaaee.	What should (might) it be made for?
woo kis liyee banaayaa jaa saktaa hai.	What can it be made for?

The -aa participle functions as a marked adjective and agrees with the grammatical subject in number and gender.

kapRaa kis liyee banaayaa gayaa.	What was the cloth made for?
kapRee kis liyee banaaee gaee.	What were the clothes made for?
dhootii kis liyee banaaii gaii.	What was the dhoti made for?

In meaning the above constructions most generally correspond to the English passive (is made, is done, etc.), although translations vary in different context. Whenever Hindi has parallel forms such as bannaa 'be made,' banaanaa 'make,' biknaa 'be sold,' beecnaa 'sell' two types of constructions with passive meaning are possible:

woo kis liyee bantaa hai.	What is it being made for?
woo kis liyee banaayaa jaataa hai.	What is it being made for?
woo kab biktee hãĩ.	When are they being sold?
woo kab beecee jaatee hãĩ?	When are they being sold?

The two types of constructions are quite similar. The difference in meaning is difficult to convey in English translation. The aa participle plus jaanaa constructions emphasizes the fact that something is being accomplished and implies that an actor exists, although this actor might not be mentioned. This can in English also be rendered by the impersonal 'they' as in 'what do they sell them for?'. The second type of construction simply reports a fact without implying anything as who performs the action.

A. Substitution drill

Where are these goods made?

yee maal kahãã (banaayaa) jaataa hai.
beecaa
ḳhariidaa
liyaa
deekhaa
dikhaayaa
laayaa

B. Substitution drill

Where will such Hindi be understood?

aisii hindii kahãã (samjhii) jaaeegii.
paRhaaii
paRhii
likhii
sunii
boolii

C. Substitution-agreement drill

In the washerman's house clothes are being washed.

dhoobii-kee makaan-mẽẽ (kapRee) dhooee jaatee hãĩ.
saaRiyãã
kurtaa
moozee
ķamiiz
dhootiyãã
paijaamaa
blaauz
kurtee
blaauzẽẽ

D. Substitution-agreement drill

An old building was seen in that city.

us šahar-mẽẽ (puraanii imaarat) deekhii gaii.
naii dukaanẽẽ
eek baRaa makaan
mooTee aadmii
patlii aurtẽẽ
buuRhee loog

E. Individual conversational response drill

Instructor: What building was seen in Sikri?
1st Student: The Buland Darwaza was seen.

Instructor: siikrii-mẽẽ kaun sii imaarat deekhii gaii.
1st Student: buland darwaazaa deekhaa gayaa.

Instructor: saaRii-kee liyee kitnaa paisaa diyaa gayaa.
2nd Student: biis rupaee diee gaee.

Instructor: kulii-kii mazduurii-kee liyee kitnaa paisaa diyaa gayaa.
nainiitaal-kii saRak-par kaun sii ciizẽẽ Thiik kii gaĩĩ.
nainiitaal-kee aanee-jaanee-waalee-see kyaa puuchaa gayaa.
naii bastii-kee aanee-jaanee-waalee-see kyaa puuchaa gayaa.
aagree-kii saRak-par kaun aadmii bulaayaa gayaa.
masjid-kee saamnee kyaa likhaa gayaa.
masjid-kee aagee kyaa beecaa gayaa.
masjid-kee aagee kaun saahab deekhee gaee.

F. Conversational response drill

Instructor	Class
Where did that young man go?	He went out.
woo jawaan aadmii kahãã gayaa.	baahar calaa gayaa.
woo buuRhii aurat kahãã gaii.	calii gaii.
woo chooTii laRkiyãã kahãã gaĩĩ.	calii gaĩĩ.
woo duusree baccee kahãã gaee.	calee gaee.
woo hindustaanii loog kahãã gaee.	calee gaee.
woo buuRhaa wideešii kahãã gayaa.	calaa gayaa.
woo pyaarii baccii kahãã gaii.	calii gaii.
woo sundar aurtẽẽ kahãã gaĩĩ.	calii gaĩĩ.

Rapid Response

Group 1

aasafii masjid kis šahar-mẽẽ hai.
kyaa wideešii urduu paRhnaa jaantii hãĩ?
iid kin loogõõ-kaa ḳhaas tyoohar hai.
kyaa sab loog masjid-kee andar haath mũh dhoo rahee hãĩ?
miir saahab kis-kee doost hãĩ.
salmaa kis-kaa naam hai.
kyaa salmaa namaaz paRh rahii hai?
masjid-kee andar kyaa hoo rahaa hai.
kyaa namaaz ḳhatam hoonee-waalii hai?
kyaa hindustaanii ijaazat caahtee hãĩ?
kyaa loog baiTh-kar namaaz paRhtee hãĩ?
galee milnee-kee rawaaj-koo kyaa kahtee hãĩ.
kyaa amriikaa-mẽẽ iid milnee-kaa rawaaj hai?
lakhnauu-kii ḳhaas ciiz kyaa hai.

Group 2

wideešii lakhnauu-mẽẽ kis jagah hãĩ.
wahããã-par kyaa likhaa hai.
kyaa wideešii bahut paRhnaa jaantii hãĩ?
iid mubaarak-kaa kyaa matlab hai.
masjid-kee saamnee kaun loog jamaa hoo gaee hãĩ.
kyaa iid hinduõõ-kaa tyoohar hai?
namaaz-kii taiyaarii-kee liyee loog kyaa kar rahee hãĩ.
kyaa wideešii sab loogõõ-koo jaantee hãĩ?
kyaa miir saahab jaipur-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?
kyaa miir saahab jaipur-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ?
miir saahab-kee saath kaun hai.
kyaa miir saahab tamaašaa deekhnee aaee hãĩ?
loog kaisee namaaz paRhtee hãĩ.
kyaa hinduu bhii namaaz paRhtee hãĩ?
iid-kaa kaun-saa rawaaj wideešii-koo pasand aayaa hai.
baccee kis ciiz-kee liyee aaee hãĩ.
khilaunee kis ciiz-kee banee hãĩ.

Review Conversations

masjid-kee paas

1. A: is masjid-kaa kyaa naam hai.
B: isee aasafii masjid kahtee hãĩ.
A: yee too kaafii puraanii maaluum paRtii hai?
B: jii hãã, yee lakhnauu-kii bahut mašhuur masjid hai.
A: kyaa yahãã rooz itnii bhiiR hootii hai?
B: jii nahĩĩ, sirf iid-kee din hii itnii bhiiR hootii hai.

2. A: kyaa aap-koo urduu aatii hai?
B: hãã, thooRii urduu bool saktii hũũ.
A: tab too aap thooRaa paRh bhii saktii hõõgii.
B: jii nahĩĩ, abhii paRhnaa siikh rahii hũũ.
A: deekhiyee, saamnee likhaa hai iid mubaarak.
B: hãã, utnaa too paRhii saktii hũũ.

3. A: wahãã itnii bhiiR kyõõ hoo rahii hai.
B: woo loog haath mũh dhoonee-kee liyee khaRee hãĩ.
A: yee loog namaaz paRhnee nahĩĩ jaaẽẽgee kyaa?
B: kyõõ nahĩĩ, namaaz-kii hii taiyaarii kar rahee hãĩ.
A: yee baccee bhii namaaz paRhnee aaee hãĩ kyaa?
B: jii nahĩĩ, baccee too sirf tamaašaa deekhnee aaee hãĩ.

4. A: woo loog galee kyõõ mil rahee hãĩ.
B: is-koo iid milnaa kahtee hãĩ. yee is tyoohaar-kaa ḳhaas rawaaj hai.
A: namaaz šuruu hoonee-kee pahlee too aisaa nahĩĩ kartee.
B: jii hãã, yee too namaaz ḳhatam hoonee-kee baad kiyaa jaataa hai.
A: hamaaree yahãã too aisaa kooii rawaaj nahĩĩ hai.
B: yahãã too iid milnee doostõõ-kee ghar bhii jaatee hãĩ.

baat-ciit

5. A: aadaab arz ḳhaan saahab, kahãã gaee thee?
B: yũũhii zaraa baazaar gayaa thaa is baccii-koo ghumaanee.
A: is-kee liyee kooii khilaunaa nahĩĩ ḳhariidaa kyaa?
B: nahĩĩ, ḳhariidaa hai, yee miTTii-kee khilaunee deekhiyee.
A: hãã, yee too bahut sundar hãĩ. kyaa yahĩĩ bantee hãĩ?
B: jii hãã, yee lakhnauu-kii ḳhaas ciiz hai.

6. A: kahiyee miir saahab, salmaa aaj nahĩĩ aaii kyaa?
B: nahĩĩ, aaj too woo ghar-par hii ruk gaii.
A: kyaa aap ḳhaan saahab-koo jaantee hãĩ?
B: jii hãã, woo too meeree baRee acchee doost hãĩ.
A: aaj pããc bajee un-see milnee jaanaa hai. kyaa aap meeree saath cal sakẽẽgee?
B: koošiš karũũgaa.

Unit IV Part D

Situational Response

tããgee-par sair

tããgee-waalaa:

kyõõ (saahab), kyaa aap-koo aagree-mẽẽ ghuumnaa hai?
aap-nee aagree-mẽẽ kaun kaun-sii imaartẽẽ deekhĩĩ.
jaipur-mẽẽ aap-kee kooii jaan pahcaan-kee hãĩ?
kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ piital-kee bartan miltee hãĩ?
jaipur-mẽẽ aap kyaa kyaa ciizẽẽ deekhnee aaee hãĩ.
kyaa aap kisii gããw-kee rahnee-waalee-see milee hãĩ?
kyaa aap hawaa mahal-kee andar bhii ghuumnee calẽẽgee?
kyaa aap-koo kisii ḳhaas ḳisim-kii imaarat deekhnii hai?
aap-koo naee baazaar lee calũũ yaa puraanee.
kyaa aap kal bhii šahar ghuumẽẽgee?
kyaa aap-koo tããgee-mẽẽ jagah-kii kamii lagtii hai?

amriikan:

kyõõ bhaaii, jaipur-mẽẽ kooii acchaa hooTal hoogaa?
jaipur-mẽẽ mujhee kaun-sii puraanii imaartẽẽ deekhnii caahiyẽẽ.
yahãã-kee mašhuur mahal-kaa naam kyaa hai.
yahãã-kii kaun-sii ḳhaas ciizẽẽ hãĩ.
kyaa jaipur-kee naee hissee-mẽẽ dukaanẽẽ raastee-par lagtii hãĩ?
jaipur kahãã-kii raajdhaanii hai.
kyaa šahar-mẽẽ ghumaanẽẽ-kee liyee sarkaarii gaaiD miltee hãĩ?
kyaa hawaa mahal-mẽẽ ab kooii nahĩĩ rahtaa hai?
kyõõ bhaaii, puraanee samay-mẽẽ raaniyãã kahãã rahtii thĩĩ.
kyaa jaipur-mẽẽ kooii masjid hai?
tumhaarii kitnii mazduurii huii.

fatehpur siikrii-kee khãDhar

gaaiD:

aadaab arz, aap siikrii kab aaee.
aap-nee hindustaan-mẽẽ kaun kaun-see šahar deekhee hãĩ.
aap-koo kaun-saa šahar sab-see zyaadaa pasand aayaa.
kyaa aap-nee aagree-mẽẽ akbar-kaa ḳilaa deekhaa hai?
kyaa aap-nee ḳilee-see taaj mahal bhii deekhaa?
aap-koo ḳilaa kaisaa lagaa.

kyaa aap-kee deeš-mẽẽ bhii bahut puraanii imaartẽẽ hãĩ?
aap-koo aur kis ciiz-kee baaree-mẽẽ puuchnaa hai.
aap kyaa aaj hii aagraa jaa rahee hãĩ?
aap phir siikrii kab aaẽẽgee.

amriikan:
kyaa aap sarkaarii gaaiD hãĩ?
aap kahãã-kee rahnee-waalee hãĩ.
kyaa aap mujhee siikrii-kii mašhuur imaartõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ baataaẽẽgee?
yee saamnee kaun-sii imaarat-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.
yee farš-par kaisee nišaan hãĩ.
raajdhaanii bannee-see pahlee siikrii-kee paas kyaa thaa.
in caarõõ taraf-kee mahalõõ-mẽẽ kaun rahtaa thaa.
akbar kyaa kheel kheeltaa thaa.
wahãã uupar kaun kaun baiThtee thee.
aap kab-see gaaiD-kaa kaam kar rahee hãĩ.

aasafii masjid-kee paas
hindustaanii:
kyaa aap-nee siikrii-mẽẽ šaahii masjid deekhii hai?
kyaa aap loogõõ-kee yahãã bhii iid-kaa tyoohaar hootaa hai?
kyaa aap miir saahab-koo jaantee hãĩ?
miir saahab-kii baccii-kaa naam aap-koo maaluum hai?
aap-koo baccõõ-kee liyee kitnee khilaunee ḳhariidnee hãĩ.
aap-kee yahãã kaun-see tyoohaar hootee hãĩ.
kyaa aap urduu paRh saktee hãĩ?
aap tããgee-see waapas jaaẽẽgee yaa rikšaa-see.
aap pahlee miir saahab-kee ghar jaaẽẽgee yaa siidhee sTeešan.

amriikan:
bhaaii saahab, is masjid-kaa naam kyaa hai.
yee saaree loog masjid-mẽẽ kis liyee aaee hãĩ.
masjid-mẽẽ loog haath mũh kyõõ dhoo rahee hãĩ.
kyaa iid-kee tyoohaar-mẽẽ sabhii loog hissaa leetee hãĩ?
aap-nee meeree doost miir saahab-koo deekhaa hai kyaa?
masjid-mẽẽ loog galee kyõõ mil rahee hãĩ.
suniyee, iid mubaarak-kaa kyaa matlab hootaa hai.
kyaa musalmaan har rooz namaaz paRhtee hãĩ.
har rooz namaaz kitnee bajee hootii hai.
iid-kee tyoohaar-par baccõõ-kee liyee miThaaii kahãã mileegii.

Review Conversations

šahar-kii sair

1. A: tããgaa ḳhaalii hai, kyaa?
B: ḳhaalii hai saahab, kahãã calẽẽgee.
A: hawaa mahal jaanee-kee kitnee paisee loogee.
B: doo rupaee hõõgee, saahab.
A: acchaa bhaaii, caloo.

2. A: tããgee-waalee, idhar aanaa.
B: kahãã lee calũũ saahab.
A: mujhee piital-kee bartan caahiyẽẽ, woo kahãã milẽẽgee.
B: puraanee baazaar-mẽẽ.
A: acchaa, puraanee baazaar lee caloo.

gaaiD-kee saath

3. A: kyõõ saahab, kyaa aap-koo gaaiD-kii zaruurat hai?
B: kyaa kyaa dikhaaoogee.
A: sabhii mašhuur imaartõõ-kee baaree-mẽẽ bataaũũgaa.
B: pahlee kahãã-see šuruu karoogee.
A: buland darwaazee-see. deekhiyee, saamnee hai.

4. A: buland darwaazee-koo kis-nee banwaayaa thaa.
B: akbar-nee, saahab. aaj kal is-kii marammat hoo rahii hai.
A: yee kyaa šaahii masjid hai?
B: jii hãã. is-kii diwaarõõ-par bahut jaaliyãã banii hãĩ.

iid-kaa tyoohaar

5. A: itnii bhiiR kyõõ hoo rahii hai yahãã.
B: aap nahĩĩ jaantee, aaj iid hai. loog namaaz paRhnee aaee hãĩ.
A: sirf aadmii hii hãĩ yahãã, aurtẽẽ namaaz nahĩĩ paRhtii hãĩ, kyaa?
B: paRhtii hãĩ, magar ghar-par.
A: deekhiyee, sab loog andar jaa rahee hãĩ. kyaa aap nahĩĩ jaaẽẽgee?

6. A: sab loog baahar aa rahee hãĩ. kyaa namaaz ḳhatam hoo gaii hai?
B: jii hãã. deekhiyee, sab loog galee mil rahee hãĩ.
A: yee kaisaa rawaaj hai.
B: is-koo iid milnaa kahtee hãĩ.
A: caliyee, miir saahab-koo DhũũDhẽẽgee.
B: acchaa. caliyee, calaa jaaee.

baat-ciit

7. A: aap-nee dillii-mẽẽ kaun kaun-sii imaartẽẽ deekhĩĩ.
B: laal ḳilaa aur jaamaa-masjid deekhee hãĩ.
A: cããdnii cauk gaee thee, kyaa?
B: hãã, laal ḳilaa aur cããdnii cauk eek hii din gayaa thaa.
A: kuch ḳhariidaa aap-nee wahãã-see.
B: bas kuch saaRiyãã aur juutee ḳhariidee hãĩ.

8. A: naii saRak-par bhii gaee thee, kyaa?
B: hãã, leekin wahãã bahut bhiiR thii. calnaa bhii muškil thaa.
A: waapas kab jaa rahee hãĩ aap.
B: doo din aur rahũũgaa yahãã, phir aagree jaanaa hai.
A: too phir kyaa yahãã waapas aaẽẽgee?
B: nahĩĩ, wahãã-see siidhaa calaa jaaũũgaa.

9. A: singh saahab, caliyee rikšee-mẽẽ baiTh-kar baazaar calẽẽ.
B: kuch ḳhariidnaa hai kyaa aap-koo?
A: miTTii-kee khilaunee deekhẽẽgee. baccee ḳhuš hoo jaaẽẽgee.
B: kitnee baccee hãĩ aap-kee.
A: caar hãĩ.
B: sab-see baRaa kitnee saal-kaa hai.

10. A: kamlaa jii, aap kabhii pahlee bhii jaipur aaii hãĩ?
B: nahĩĩ, mãĩ-too pahlii hii baar jaipur aaii hũũ.
A: kis hooTal-mẽẽ rukii hãĩ.
B: meerii bahan rahtii hãĩ, naii bastii-mẽẽ. un-kee paas rukii hũũ.
A: woo too nazdiik hii hai.

11. A: kyõõ, warmaa saahab, kaisaa lagaa aap-koo hamaaraa jaipur.
B: bahut saaf šahar hai.
A: kyaa kyaa deekhaa aap-nee?
B: samay kam hoonee-see puuraa nahĩĩ deekh sakaa.
A: too phir kabhii aaiyee.

HINDI-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

A	Adjective
Adv	Adverb
Conj	Conjunction
F	Feminine noun
GN	Grammar notes
Inter	Interrogative
M	Masculine noun
M/F	Masculine or feminine noun
Obl	Oblique
P	Postposition
Part	Particle
Pl	Plural
Pro	Pronoun
RC	Review conversation
Rel	Relative
Sg	Singular
V	Verb, intransitive
V A	Verb, auxiliary
V T	Verb, transitive
V n	Verb, intransitive but takes -nee
V Tnn	Verb, transitive but doesn't take -nee
WS	Word Study

4A	akbar	M	(name of Moghul emperor)
3B	agar	Conj	if
2A	aglaa	A	next
1C WS	angreezii	F	English
1A	acchaa	A	good
2B	anDarwiyar	M	undershorts
1C	andar	Adv	inside
1C	apnaa	A	one's own
2C WS	ab	Adv	now
2A	abhii	Adv	now, right now (emphatic ab+hii)
3A WS	amiir	A	rich
1C WS	amriikan	M/F	American
1C	amriikaa	M	America
1A	aliigaRh	M	Aligarh (city)
4B WS	almaarii	F	closet

4C WS	ããkh	F	eye
3B	aagee	Adv	ahead, in front
3A	aagraa	M	Agra (city)
1B	aaj	Adv	today
4B	aaj kal	Adv	these days
4C	aadaab arz	M	(A Moslem greeting)
2B	aadmii	M	man
2C	aadhaa	A	one-half
1A	aanaa	V	come
1A	aanaa	M	anna (coin)
1C	aanaa jaanaa	V	come and go
1A WS	aap	Pro	you, polite
3A	aap loog	Pro	you, polite (Pl)

4B		aabaadii	F	population, inhabitants
4A		aaraam	M	comfort, rest
4C		aasafii masjid	F	Asafi Mosque
2B	WS	aasaan	A	easy
4C		ijaazat	F	permission
2C		itnaa	A	this much
2A		idhar	Adv	in this direction
2B		in	Pro	these (Obl Pl of yee)
4A		intizaam	M	arrangement
4A		intizaam karnaa	V T	make arrangements
2C		intizaar	M	wait, expectation
2C		intizaar karnaa	V T	wait
4A		imaarat	F	building
1A		is	Pro	this (Obl Sg of yee)
3C		is liyee	Adv	therefore
4C		iid	F	Eid (Moslem festival)
4C		iid mubaarak	M	happy Eid
4C	WS	unglii	F	finger
4A		ujaaRnaa	V T	desert
3B		uThaanaa	V T	lift, carry
3B	WS	uThnaa	V	sit up, get up
3A		utnaa	A	that much
1B		udhar	Adv	in that direction
2A		un	Pro	those (Obl Pl of woo)
1C	WS	urduu	F	urdu
2A	WS	ušaa	F	(woman's name)
2A		us	Pro	that (Obl Sg of woo)
4B		ũũcaa	A	high
3B		uupar	Adv	above
3B		ekspres	F	express (train)
4C		eek saa	A	same
4C		eek saath	Adv	all together
3A		ai		Hey! Oh!
3A		aisaa	A	this way
1B		aur	Conj	and
2B		aur	A	other, additional
2B	WS	aurat	F	woman
1B	WS	kaccaa	A	unripe
1C		kapRaa	M	cloth
2B		kab	Adv	when
1C		kam	A	less, few
4A		kamii	F	shortage
2B		ḳamiiz	F	shirt
1C	WS	kamraa	M	room
3A		-kar	Part	having...(with verb)
4B	WS	karaanaa	V T	have (something) done
1A	WS	karnaa	V T	make, do
2B		kal	Adv	tomorrow
3C		kašT	M	trouble
1B		kahãã	Adv	where
3C		kahĩĩ	Adv	anywhere
2A		kahnaa	V T	say
1A		-kaa	P	of
2A		kaag̣az	M	paper
4C	WS	kaan	M	ear
4A		kaafii	A	enough, quite
2A		kaam	M	work

2C	WS	kaalaa	A	black
1B	WS	kitaab	F	book
1B		kitnaa	A	how much
2A		kidhar	Adv	where
		kin	Pro	what, who (Inter, Obl Pl)
4A		kinaaraa	M	corner, side, edge, shore
3A		ḳilaa	M	fort
		kis	Pro	what, who (Inter, Obl Sg)
3C		kisii	Pro	(Obl of kooii)
4A		ḳism	F	kind
1C		kuch	Pro	somewhat
2B	WS	kurtaa	M	tunic
1C		kursii	F	chair
3B		kulii	M	porter
3B		-kee andar	P	inside, inside of
3B	WS	-kee aagee	P	in front
2B		-kee uupar	P	on top of, above
2B	WS	-kee niicee	P	under, below
2B		-kee pahlee	P	before
2C		-kee paas	P	with, near
3B	WS	-kee piichee	P	behind
2B		-kee baad	P	after, afterwards
1C		-kee liyee	P	for
3B		-kee saath	P	with
1A		keelaa	M	banana
1A		kaisaa	A	how
1C		-koo	P	to
2B		kooii	Pro	any, some, anyone, someone
2B	WS	kooT	M	coat
3C		kooThii	F	dwelling, residence
2B		koošiš	F	attempt
2B		koošiš karnaa	V T	try
2C		kaun	Pro	who (Inter)
1A		kyaa (stressed)	Pro	what (Inter)
1B		kyaa (unstressed)	Adv	(question word)
2C		kyõõ	Adv	why (Inter)
3B		klaas	M	class
4A		khãDhar	M	ruins
1C	WS	ḳhatam	A	end
1C	WS	ḳhatam karnaa	V T	finish
4C		ḳhatam hoonaa	V	be finished, finish
3B		khaRaa	A	standing
3B		khaRaa hoonaa	V	stand
4C		khaRnaa	V	stand
1B	WS	ḳharaab	A	bad
1C		ḳhariidnaa	V T	buy
4C		ḳhayaal	M	opinion
2A	WS	ḳhaan	M	family name
1A		khaanaa	V T	eat
4A		ḳhaalii	A	empty
3A		ḳhaas	A	important, special
3B		khiRkii	F	window
4C		khilaunaa	M	toy
4B		ḳhuub	Adv	fine
4A		ḳhuubsuurat	A	beautiful
4C		kheel	M	game
4A		kheelnaa	V	play
3C	WS	khoonaa	V T	lose
3B	WS	khoolnaa	V T	open
1B		khurcan	F	khurcan (Indian sweet)
3B	WS	khulaa	A	open
3B	WS	khulnaa	V	be opened

4B	ḳhuub	Adv	fine
3A	garam	A	hot
3A	g̣ariib	A	poor
3A	garmii	F	heat, summer
4C	galaa	M	throat, neck
4C	galee milnaa	V T	embrace
4B	gaaiD	M	guide
3B	gaaRii	F	vehicle, car, cart
4A	gaahak	M/F	customer
2B	ginnaa	V T	count
4A	g̣ilaaf	M	cover
2A WS	guptaa	M	family name
4A WS	goošt	M	meat
2C	ghanTaa	M	hour
2B	ghar	M	house, home
3A	ghuumnaa	V	wander, walk or ride around
2B WS	cappal	F	sandal
4B WS	caRhnaa	V	climb
4B	caRhwaanaa	V T	have (something) covered
3A	calnaa	V	walk, move
1C	cããdnii	A	silver
1C	cããdnii cauk	M	Chandni Chowk (street in Delhi)
4B	caarõõ	A	all four
4A WS	caawal	M	rice
2B	caahiyee	Adv	needed
3C	caahnaa	V T	want
2B	ciiz	F	thing
4A	ciTThii	F	letter
1C	cauk	M	square, mall
4B WS	chat	F	roof
1B	chooTaa	A	small
3A	jagah	F	place, spot
4C	jamaa hoonaa	V	be congregated
4B	zamaanaa	M	time, period
1B WS	zamiin	F	ground, land, floor
2A	zaraa	Adv	a little
1C	zaruur	Adv	certainly
3B	zaruurat	F	need, desire, necessity
1B WS	jaldii	F	haste, hurry
2A	jaldii karnaa	V T	hurry
1C WS	jawaab	M	answer
4C	jawaan	A	young
4A	jaalii	F	screen, network, net
1C	jaanaa	V T	go
3C	jaannaa	V T	know
3B GN	jin	Pro	which, who (Rel, Obl Pl)
3B GN	jis	Pro	which, who (Rel, Obl Sg)
1B	jii	Part	(honorific)
2A	juutaa	M	shoe, pair of shoes
4A	jaipur	M	Jaipur (city)
3A	jaisaa	A	as
3B	joo	Pro	which, who (Rel)
1A WS	zoor-see	Adv	loudly
2A	zyaadaa	A	too much
3B	jhoolaa	M	bag

3B	TikaT	M	ticket
1C WS	Tiicar	M/F	teacher
2C	TuuTaa	A	broken
3C	Taiksii	F	taxi
3C	Taiksii sTaind	M	taxi stand
4A WS	Toopii	F	hat
3A WS	ThanD	F	cold
3A	ThanDaa	A	cold
1A WS	Thiik	Adv	correct
2A	Thiik karnaa	V T	fix
3A	Thairnaa	V	stop, stay
2C	DeeRh	A	one and one-half
3C	Draaiwar	M	driver
2C	Dhaaii	A	two and one-half
4A	Dhang	M	style
3C	DhũũDhnaa	V T	search
2B	-tak	P	until
3C	tab	Adv	in that case
4C	tamaašaa	M	show, performance
3A	taraf	F	direction
2A	tarah	F	manner
4A	tããgaa	M	tonga (horsedrawn conveyance)
3A	taaj mahal	M	Taj Mahal (Moghul palace)
1A	taazaa	A	fresh
3C	taalaaš	F	search
3C	taalaaš karnaa	V T	look for
2C	tumhaaraa	A	your
2C	taiyaar	A	ready
4C	taiyaarii	F	preparations
1B	too	Part	then, but
4C	tyoohar	M	festival
2C	thaa	V A	was
2A	thooRaa	A	a little
4A	darwaazaa	M	door
1A	daam	M	price
1B	daahinaa	A	right
1C	dikhaanaa	V T	show
4A	dikhnaa	V	seem, appear
3A WS	din	M	day
1C	dillii	F	Delhi (city)
4A	diiwaar	F	wall
1B	dukaan	F	shop, store, stand
1B WS	dukaandaar	M	shopkeeper
4C	duniyãã	F	world
4A	dublaa	A	lean (person)
3B	duun ekspres	F	Doon Express (train)
3C	duur	F	distance
3B WS	duusraa	A	second, next
1C	deekhnaa	V T	look, see
1A	deenaa	V T	give
2B	deer	F	delay
4A	deeš	M	country
1B WS	dohraanaa	V T	repeat
1B	doonõõ	A	both

3C	doost	M/F	friend
2B	doo pahar	M	afternoon
3C	dhanywaad	M	thanks
2C	dhabbaa	M	spot
1B WS	dhiiree	Adv	slowly
2C	dhulaaii	F	washing charges
2B	dhulaanaa	V T	have (something) washed
3A	dhuup	F	sunshine
2B WS	dhootii	F	dhoti (garment)
2B WS	dhoonaa	V T	wash
2C	dhoobii	M	washerman
2B	na	Part	(negative)
3C	naii dillii	F	New Delhi (city)
3C	nazdiik	Adv	very
4C WS	namaskaar	F	(a formal Hindu greeting)
1C RC	namastee	F	(a Hindu greeting)
4C	namaaz	F	prayers, Moslem
4C	namaaz paRhnaa	V T	pray (Moslems)
1B WS	nambar	M	number
2A WS	nayaa	A	new
1A	nahĩĩ	Part	no, not
4C WS	naak	F	nose
3B WS	nikalnaa	V	come out
3B	nikaalnaa	V T	take out
4A	nišaan	M	mark, sigh
3B WS	niicaa	A	low
3B WS	niicee	Adv	below
2C WS	niilaa	A	blue
4A	-nee	P	(agent marker with -aa participle)
2A	nainitaal	M	Nainital (city)
2C	nooT	M	banknote
4A	pakaRnaa	V T	catch
1A	pakkaa	A	ripe
4A	pagRii	F	turban
4B	pacciisii	F	parchisi
4A	paRnaa	V	fall, lie
4A WS	paRhaa likhaa	A	literate
2C WS	paRhnaa	V T	read, study, pray
3C	pataa	M	address, knowledge
3C	pataa lagaanaa	V T	locate
4A WS	patlaa	A	thin (object)
1A	papiitaa	M	papaya (fruit)
1B	-par	P	on, at
1C	pasand	A	pleasing
4B	parsõõ	Adv	day before yesterday, day after tomorrow
4A WS	pahennaa	V T	wear, put on (clothes)
2B	pahũcnaa	V	arrive
4C	pahcaannaa	V	recognize
4A	pahlaa	A	first
3A	pahlee	Adv	at first
4C WS	pããw	M	foot
3A	paanii	M	water
2A	paališ karnaa	V T	polish
2C	paas	Adv	close
3B	pichlaa	A	last, previous
3B	piichaa	M	the rear
3B WS	piichee	Adv	after
4A	piital	M	brass

3A	piinaa	V T	drink
2C	piilaa	A	yellow
2A	puraanaa	A	old
2A WS	pušpaa	F	(woman's name)
1C WS	puuchnaa	V T	ask
4C WS	puujaa	F	prayer (Hindu)
4C WS	puujaa karnaa	V T	pray (Hindus)
1B WS	pensil	F	pencil
1B	peeRaa	M	[illegible]a (Indian sweet)
2B	paijaamaa	M	pajamas
2B WS	painT	M	trousers
3C	paidal	Adv	on foot
1B	paisaa	M	money, pice
4C	pyaaraa	A	lovely
3A	pyaas	F	thirst
3A WS	pyaasaa	A	thirsty
3B	pleeTfaarm	M	platform
2A	phaTaa	A	torn
4A GN	phaTnaa	V	be torn
4A	fatehpur siikrii	M	Fatehpur Sikri (city)
1A	phal	M	fruit
4A	farš	M	floor
3B	farsT klaas	M	first class
3C	phaaTak	F	gate
1A WS	phir	Conj	again, then
3B	bakas	M	box
3C WS	banglaa	M	residence, bungalow
4C	baccaa	M	child, little boy
4C	baccii	F	little girl
3A	bacnaa	V	be careful, be saved
2B	bajaanaa	V T	play (instrument)
2B	bajnaa	V	strike (hour)
3C	baTaa	A	over (arithmetic)
1B WS	baRaa	A	big
1C	bataanaa	V T	tell
4C WS	badan	M	body
4C	badhaaii	F	felicitations
4A	banaanaa	V T	make, build
1C	banaaras	M	Banaras (city)
1C	banaarsii	A	from Banaras
2B	baniyaain	F	undershirt
3B	band	A	closed
3B WS	band karnaa	V T	close
4A	bannaa	V	be made
4A	banwaanaa	V T	have (something) made
4A	bartan	M	container, vessel
1A WS	bas	Adv	enough, just so
4A	basaanaa	V T	cause to be inhabited
3C	bastii	F	colony, settlement
4B	basnaa	V	settle (Inter)
1A	bahut	A	very
2C	baaḳii	F	remainder
3A WS	baag̣	M	garden
1A	baazaar	M	market, bazaar
1A	baat	F	conversation, matter
1A	baat karnaa	V T	converse
3B	baad-mẽẽ	Adv	afterwards
1C	baayãã	A	left
3B	baar	F	occasion
1C WS	baahar	Adv	outside

4A	biknaa	V	be sold
2C	bilkul	Adv	entirely
3B	bistar	M	bedding
3C	biic	M	middle
4A WS	buraa	A	bad
4A	buland darwaazaa	M	high door
2B	bulaanaa	V T	call
4C	buuRhaa	M	old, old man
4C WS	buuRhii	F	old woman
2A WS	beecnaa	V T	sell
4A	beepaRhaa	A	illiterate
1A	beer	M	ber (fruit)
1C	baiThnaa	V	sit
2B	bairaa	M	room servant, bearer
1A WS	boolnaa	V Tnn	speak
1C	blaauz	F	blouse
3C	blaak	M	street block

4A WS	bharaa	A	full
2A	bhaaii	M	brother
3B WS	bhaarii	A	heavy
1A	bhii	Part	also
4C	bhiiR	F	crowd
4B	bhiitar	Adv	inside
3A WS	bhuuk	F	hunger
3A WS	bhuukaa	A	hungry
4A WS	bhuulnaa	V Tnn	forget

3C	makaan	M	building
2C	magar	Conj	but
3B	mazduurii	F	labor charges
4C	matlab	M	meaning
1B	mathuraa	M	Mathura (city)
2B	madad	F	help
2B	madad karnaa	V T	help
1C	madraas	M	Madras (city)
1C	madraasii	A	from Madras
2A	marammat	F	repairs
4B	marammat hoonaa	V	be repaired
3B	marzii	F	wish
4B	mašhuur	A	famous
4B	masjid	F	mosque
1B WS	mahãgaa	A	expensive
3A	mahal	M	palace
3A WS	mahiinaa	M	month
1C	maaf karnaa	V T	excuse
1B	maaluum	A	known
4C	maaluum hoonaa	V	seem
4C	miTTii	F	clay
1B	miThaaii	F	sweets, candy
3A	minaT	M	minute
1B	milnaa	V	meet, be available, be found
1A	miiThaa	A	sweet
4C	miir	M	(family name)
4C	mũh	M	mouth, face
2B	muškil	A	difficult
4C	musalmaan	M	Moslem
1C	meharbaanii	F	kindness, thanks
1A	-mẽẽ	P	in, inside
1B WS	meez	F	table

2A WS	meem saahab	F	ma'am
2C	meeraa	A	my
2A	mãĩ	Pro	I
2A	moocii	M	shoemaker, cobbler
2B	moozaa	M	pair of socks, sock
3B	mooTar	F	car, bus
4A WS	mooTaa	A	fat
4B	mauk̤aa	M	occasion, opportunity
4B	mauk̤aa milnaa	V	find an opportunity

1C	yahãã	Adv	here
3C	yahĩĩ	Adv	near
3B	yahii	Pro	yee (emphatic, yee+hii)
1B	yaa	Conj	or
3B	yaatrii	M/F	traveller
4A WS	yaad karnaa	V T	remember
1A	yee	Pro	this, these, he, she, it
3A	yũũ	Adv	in this fashion
3A	yũũhii	Adv	merely (emphatic, yuu+hii)

3B	rakhnaa	V T	keep, put
3B	rakh deenaa	V T	to put down
2C WS	rang	M	color
1B	rasgullaa	M	rasgulla (Indian sweet)
2A	rahnaa	V	stay
4A	raajasthaan	M	Rajasthan (state)
4A	raajdhaanii	F	capital
2B	raat	F	night
4A	raanii	F	queen
4B	raastaa	M	way, road
3A	rikšaa	F	ricksha
4C	riwaaj	M	custom
2C	ruknaa	V	be stopped, stop
1B	rupayaa	M	rupee
4B	reegistaan	M	desert
3A	reeT	M	rate
3B WS	rooknaa	V T	stop
4A	rooz	Adv	every day
1B	rooTii	F	roti (kind of flat, round bread)

4C	lakhnauu	M	Lucknow (city)
3B WS	lagaanaa	V	apply
3B WS	lagnaa	V	be applied, felt
2B WS	laRkaa	M	boy
2B WS	laRkii	F	girl
4A WS	lambaa	A	tall, long
2C WS	laal	A	red
2B	laanaa	V Tnn	bring
2B	likhnaa	V T	write
1C	leekin	Conj	but
3B	leeT	Adv	late
1A	leenaa	V T	take, accept
2C	lee aanaa	V	bring something somewhere
3B WS	lee calnaa	V	take something somewhere
1A WS	loog	M	people
4A	lauTnaa	V	go back

4B	waziir	M	Moghul minister
2A WS	warmaa	M	family name
1C	wahãã	Adv	there

2C	waapas	Adv	return
1A	-waalaa (ii)	Part	man, woman, doer
1C	wideešii	M/F	foreigner
1C WS	widyaarthii	M/F	student
1A	woo	Pro	that, those, he, she, it

2A WS	šarmaa	M	(family name)
1B	šahar	M	city
4B	šaah	M	ruler (old fashioned)
4B	šaahii	A	royal
2B	šaam	F	evening
3B	šaayad	Adv	perhaps
1A WS	šuruu	N	beginning
1A WS	šuruu karnaa	V T	begin
4A	šuruu hoonaa	V	be started

3A	sãbhalnaa	V	be careful, be managed
3B	sãbhaalnaa	V T	be careful, manage
3B	sãbhaal-kar	Adv	carefully
3A	saknaa	V	be able to
2A	saRak	F	street
1A	santraa	M	orange
2C	safeed	A	white
1A WS	sab	A	all
4A	sabzii	F	vegetables
4B	sabhii	Adv	all (emphatic sab hii)
1A	samajhnaa	V	understand
1A	samajhnaa	V T	understand (something)
2B WS	samay	M	time
4B	sarkaar	F	government
4A	sarkaarii	A	official, governmental
4C WS	salaam	M	a Moslem greeting
4C	salmaa	F	(woman's name)
1C WS	sawaal	M	question
2B	saweeraa	M	morning
2B	saweeree	Adv	in the morning
1B	sastaa	A	inexpensive
3B	sahaaranpur	M	Saharanpur (city)
2C	saa	Part	similar to
1C	saaRii	F	sari (woman's garment)
3B	saath	M	company
2C	saaf	A	clean
3B	saamaan	M	baggage, stuff (things)
3C	saamnee	Adv	in front
3A	saaraa	A	entire, whole, all
3A WS	saal	M	year
4C WS	salaam	M	(Moslem greeting)
1A	saahab	M/F	sir, ma'am
2A WS	singh	M	(family name)
4C WS	sir	M	head
1C	sirf	Adv	only
4C	siikhnaa	V T	learn
2A WS	siitaa	F	(woman's personal name)
1C	siidhaa	A	straight
1C	siidhee	Adv	straight ahead
1C	sundar	A	beautiful
1B	sunnaa	V T	listen
4B	suurat	F	face, appearance
3A WS	sekanD	M	second
1C	-see	P	from, through, with
1A	seeb	M	apple

1B	seer	M	seer (weight of about two pounds)
4A	sair	F	sightseeing trip
3B	sTeešan	M	station
3C	sTainD	M	stand (taxi)
4B	sthaan	M	place
2B	swis	A	Swiss
3A WS	haftaa	M	week
2B	ham	Pro	we
2C	hamaaraa	A	our
4A	har	A	every, each
2C WS	haraa	A	green
3B	halkaa	A	light (weight)
4A	hawaa	M	breeze, wind
1B	hãã	Adv	yes
1B	haath	M	hand
4C	haath mũh	M	hands and face
1C WS	hindii	F	Hindi
4A	hissaa	M	part
2C	hii	Part	emphatic
2A	hũũ	V A	am
1A	hãĩ	V A	are
1A	hai	V A	is
2A	hoo	V A	are (tum form)
2B	hooTal	M	hotel, restaurant
3A	hoonaa	V	become, go on, take place

Numbers

eek	1	gyaarah	11	ikkiis	21	ikattiis	31	iktaaliis	41
doo	2	baarah	12	baaiis	22	battiis	32	baiaaliis	42
tiin	3	teerah	13	teeiis	23	tẽẽtiis	33	teetaaliis	43
caar	4	caudah	14	caubiis	24	cãũtiis	34	cawaaliis	44
pããc	5	pandrah	15	pacciis	25	pãĩtiis	35	pãĩtaaliis	45
chah	6	soolah	16	chabbiis	26	chattiis	36	chayaaliis	46
saat	7	satrah	17	sattaaiis	27	sãĩtiis	37	sãĩtaaliis	47
aaTh	8	aThaarah	18	aTThaaiis	28	aRtiis	38	aRtaaliis	48
nau	9	unniis	19	untiis	29	untaaliis	39	uncaas	49
das	10	biis	20	tiis	30	caaliis	40	pacaas	50

pahlaa	1st	aadhaa	1/2
duusraa	2nd	DeeRh	1 1/2
tiisraa	3rd	Dhaaii	2 1/2
cauthaa	4th		
pããcwaa	5th		
chatwaa	6th		
saatwaa	7th		
aaThwaa	8th		
nawaa	9th		
daswaa	10th		
gyaarwaa	11th		